ChineseClass101.com



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp S1 #1 Chinese Self-Introduction

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
4 Grammar

1

COPYRIGHT © 2015 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你好，我叫王国易。

2. 我叫李珍。很高兴认识你。

3. 我也是。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你好，我叫王國易。

2. 我叫李珍。很高興認識你。

3. 我也是。

PINYIN

1. Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì.

2. Wǒ jiào Lǐ Zhēn. Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.

3. Wǒ yě shì.

ENGLISH

1. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.

2. I'm Li Zhen. Nice to meet you.

CONT'D OVER

3. You too.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello	phrase
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun
叫	叫	jiào	to call	verb
很	很	hěn	very, very much	adverb
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy	adjective
认识	認識	rènshi	to know	verb
也	也	yě	also, too	adverb
是	是	shì	to be	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你好，我想找安娜。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo Ānnà. Hello, can I speak to Anna?	你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.
我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我叫子安。 Wǒ jiào Zǐ ān. My name is Zi an.

你叫什么名字? Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì? What is your name?	今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。 Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí, jiào Yuèguāng. My sister put out another album this year called "Moonlight."
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	很高兴认识你。 Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ. Nice to meet you.
你认识他吗? Nǐ rènshí tā ma? Do you know him?	咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.
他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.	我是大学生。 Wǒ shì dà xué sheng. I am a college student.
你是我最喜欢的作家! Nǐ shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de zuòjiā! You are my favorite author!	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

A Good Way to Start a Conversation

你好 (*nǐhǎo*) is the universal word for "hello" in Chinese. If you are speaking to an older person, or in a formal setting, you can use the more formal version: 您好 (*nínhǎo*). 认识 (*rènshi*) means "to know" or "to be familiar with." However in some contexts, as in this lesson's dialogue, 认识 (*rènshi*) also can be used for a first meeting, to say that you are happy to "meet" or "know" a person.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Self-Introductions

你好，我叫王国易。

Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì.

"Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi."

你好

(*nǐhǎo*)

"Hello" in Chinese is made up of two words: 你, meaning "you" and '好', meaning "good." On very formal meetings, you can replace the 你(*nǐ*) with the formal term for "you," which is 您 (*nín*).

叫

(*jiào*)

The verb 叫 (*jiào*) means "to call". So to introduce yourself, you are simply saying, "I'm called _____."

If you would like to ask someone their name, you can say:

你叫什么名字?

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?

"What is your name?"

The response:

我叫李珍，很高兴认识你。

Wǒ jiào Lǐ Zhēn, hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.

"I'm Li Zhen, nice to meet you."

我也是。

Wǒ yě shì.

"Likewise."

认识

(*rènshi*)

The verb 认识 (*rènshi*) means "to know" or "to be familiar with," however, in the context of the phrase 很高兴认识你。(*Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.*) the implication is that of "to meet," since this meeting signifies a making of one's acquaintance, and thus, thereafter, they will "know" each other.

我也是。
Wǒ yě shì.

This phrase literally means "I also am." In this dialogue, it is said in response to the statement "Nice to meet you" to express a corresponding feeling.

Names in Chinese

Names in Chinese are generally made up of either two or three characters. The surname is one character, and is given first, followed by the given name or names. For example:

王国易
Wáng Guóyì

李珍
Lǐ Zhēn

Sometimes, in more formal settings, a person will simply as for a person's surname. They will do this by asking:

您贵姓？
Nǐn guì xìng?
"Your surname is?"

To which one would respond:

我姓_____.
Wǒ xìng _____.
"My surname is _____."

Language Expansion

There are other ways to say "Nice to meet you" in Chinese. Both of these phrases are acceptable as well:

幸会
(xìnghuì)

久仰
(jiǔyǎng)

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp S1 #2 Talking Nationality in Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar

2

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你好。 我叫宁健超。 我是中国人。

2. 你好。 我叫子安。 我是加拿大人。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你好。 我叫寧健超。 我是中國人。

2. 你好。 我叫子安。 我是加拿大人。

PINYIN

1. Nǐhǎo. Wǒ jiào Nìng Jiànchāo. Wǒ shì Zhōngguórén.

2. Nǐhǎo. Wǒ jiào Zǐ ān. Wǒ shì Jiānádàrén.

ENGLISH

1. Hello. I'm Ning Jianchao. I am Chinese.

2. Hello. I'm Zi an. I am Canadian.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello

我	我	wǒ	I, me
叫	叫	jiào	to call
是	是	shì	to be
中国人	中國人	Zhōngguórén	Chinese (person)
加拿大人	加拿大人	Jiā'nádàrén	Canadian (person)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。 Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí, jiào Yuèguāng. My sister put out another album this year called "Moonlight."	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēgē. He is my older brother.
我是中国人。 Wǒ shì Zhōngguórén. I am Chinese.	我是加拿大人。 Wǒ shì Jiānádàrén. I am Canadian.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Talking About Ethnicity

你好。我叫宁健超。我是中国人。

Nǐhǎo. Wǒ jiào Nìng Jiànchāo. Wǒ shì Zhōngguórén.

"Hello. I'm Ning Jianchao. I am Chinese."

你好。我教子安。我是加拿大人。

Nǐhǎo. Wǒ jiào Zǐ ān. Wǒ shì Jiānádàrén.
"Hello. I'm Zi an. I am Canadian."

Other Countries and Ethnicities

美国
Měiguǒ
"America"

美国人
Měiguǒrén
"American"

日本
Rìběn
"Japan"

日本人
Rìběnrén
"Japanese"

Expressing Ethnicities

我们是美国人。
Wǒmen shì Měiguǒrén
"We are American"

你是美国人。
Nǐ shì Měiguǒrén
"You are American"

他们是美国人。
Tāmen shì Měiguǒrén

"They are American"

Word Order in Simple Chinese Sentences

The above sentences demonstrate the basic word order of a Chinese sentence:

Subject + Verb + Object

In many cases, English takes the same word order for its basic sentences.

我喝茶。
Wǒ hē chá.
"I drink tea."

他教中文。
Tā jiāo zhōngwén.
"He teaches Chinese."

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp S1 #3 Useful Phrases in the Chinese Classroom

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
5 Grammar

3

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 老师，“_____”用中文怎么说?
2. “_____”
3. 慢一点儿，好吗?
4. “_____”
5. 请帮我写一下，好吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 老師，“_____”用中文怎麼說?
2. “_____”
3. 慢一點兒，好嗎?
4. “_____”
5. 請幫我寫一下，好嗎?

PINYIN

1. Lǎoshī, “_____” yòng zhōngwén zěnme shuō?
2. “_____”

CONT'D OVER

3. Màn yīdiǎnr, hǎo ma?

4. “_____”

5. Qǐng bāng wǒ xiě yīxià, hǎo ma?

ENGLISH

1. Teacher, how do you say "_____" in Chinese?

2. "_____"

3. Slowly, please.

4. "_____"

5. Please write it down for me, OK?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
老师	老師	lǎoshī	teacher
我	我	wǒ	I, me
好吗	好嗎	hǎo ma	is it ok?
帮	幫	bāng	to help
一点儿	一點兒	yīdiǎnr	a bit
慢	慢	màn	slowly, slow

遍	遍	biàn	measure word for actions that are the same when repeated, times
一	一	yī	one
再	再	zài	again
请	請	qǐng	please
说	說	shuō	to say, to speak
怎么	怎麼	zěnme	how
中文	中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
用	用	yòng	to use
一下	一下	yī xià	a while
写	寫	xiě	to write

SAMPLE SENTENCES

张老师很忙。 Zhāng lǎoshī hěn máng. Teacher Zhang is very busy.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
明天给我，好吗? Míngtiān gěi wǒ, hǎo ma? Give it to me tomorrow, OK?	你可以帮我做吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ zuò ma? Can you help me do it?
慢一点儿，好吗? Màn yīdiǎnr, hǎo ma? A little slower, OK?	你可以说得慢一点吗? Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎn ma? Can you speak a little slower?

我做了好几遍了。 Wǒ zuò le hǎojǐ biàn le. I did it quite a few times.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yī biàn ba. Do it again.	请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yīxià zhè ge dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.
请再说一遍。 Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn. Please, say it again.	他怎么这么凶? Tā zěnme zhème xiōng? How come he's so angry?
我不学中文。 Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén. I don't study Chinese.	你要用这个方法。 Nǐ yào yòng zhè ge fāngfǎ. You need to use this method.
请稍等一下。 Qǐng shāo děng yī xià. Please wait a moment.	你写字很漂亮。 Nǐ xiě zì hěn piàoliang. You write so beautifully.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

一下 (*yīxià*) Literally, 一下 (*yīxià*) means "a while" or "for a moment," however when placed after a verb, it doesn't necessarily have this meaning. It is used to soften the tone of the request. 好吗 (*hǎo ma*) literally means "good?" It is often used as a tag after a request and is the equivalent of the English "is it OK?" or "alright?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Phrases that are Useful in the Classroom.

老师，"_____"用中文怎么说？

Lǎoshī, "_____" yòng zhōngwén zěnme shuō?

"Teacher, how do you say '_____' in Chinese?"

老师
lǎoshī
"teacher"

In China, teaching has been an honored and respected profession since the time of Confucius, the great philosopher and educator who was honored as "teacher of all teachers." Today too, teachers in China are treated with esteem and addressed by their title, '老师' (*lǎoshī*). This form of address can be used on its own when speaking to the teacher, but is most polite when the title is used in conjunction with their last name, i.e:

李老师
Lǐ Lǎoshī

In Chinese, the last name comes before the title.

Adjective + 一点儿

慢一点儿，好吗？
Màn yīdiǎnr, hǎo ma?
"A little more slowly, please."

Adding the term '一点儿' (*yīdiǎnr*) after an adjective literally means "a little." It is often used when making a command; it softens the command somewhat:

慢
màn
"slow"

慢一点儿
màn yīdiǎnr
"a little slower"

The character 儿 (*r*) you see added to the end of '一点' (*yīdiǎn*) is a phonetic character that has no meaning on its own. Speakers of Mandarin Chinese from Northern China frequently add this sound onto the end of certain words.

More examples:
快一点儿

kuài yīdiǎnr
"a little faster"

大一点儿
dà yīdiǎnr
"a little bigger"

小一点儿
xiǎo yīdiǎnr
"a little smaller"

再 + verb + (number) 遍

请再说一遍。
Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn.
"Please say it again"

To express repetition of an action in Chinese, you can use this sentence pattern. Put the 再 (*zài*) in front of the verb, and it means "again." Then, to be specific about the number of times, you then add the number + 遍 ("number" + *biàn "time(s)"*). Put it all together, and it means "say it one more time," i.e:

再说一遍
zài shuō yī biàn
"say it one more time"

More examples:

再说三遍
zài shuō sān biàn
"repeat it again three times"

请帮我 + verb

请帮我写一下，好吗？
Qǐng bāng wǒ xiě yīxià, hǎo ma?
"Please write it down for me, OK?"

This sentence structure is commonly used in Chinese to ask a favor of someone. '帮' literally means "to help." To request someone's assistance, or a favor, use this phrase as we heard in the dialogue:

请帮我写.
Qǐng bāng wǒ xiě.
"Please write (it) for me." (literally "Please help me write.")

More examples:

请帮我拿。
Qǐng bāng wǒ ná.
"Please hold (it) for me." (literally "Please help me hold.")

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp S1 #4 Numbers 1 to 100 in Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 一，二，三，四，五，六，七，八，九，十

2. 二十，三十，四十，五十，六十，七十，八十，九十，一百

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 一，二，三，四，五，六，七，八，九，十

2. 二十，三十，四十，五十，六十，七十，八十，九十，一百

PINYIN

1. yī, èr, sān, sì, wǔ, liù, qī, bā, jiǔ, shí

2. èrshí, sānshí, sìshí, wǔshí, liùshí, qīshí, bāshí, jiǔshí, yī bǎi

ENGLISH

1. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

2. 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
二	二	èr	two

九十	九十	jiǔshí	ninety
八十	八十	bāshí	eighty
七十	七十	qīshí	seventy
六十	六十	liùshí	sixty
五十	五十	wǔshí	fifty
四十	四十	sìshí	forty
三十	三十	sānshí	thirty
二十	二十	èrshí	twenty
十	十	shí	ten
九	九	jiǔ	nine
八	八	bā	eight
七	七	qī	seven
六	六	liù	six
五	五	wǔ	five
四	四	sì	four
三	三	sān	three
一	一	yī	one
一百	一百	yī bǎi	100

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我家在二楼。 Wǒ jiā zài èrlóu. My home is on the second floor.	那个老爷爷九十岁。 Nàgè lǎo yéye jiùshí suì. That old grandpa is 90 years old.

八十块可以吗? Bāshí kuài kěyǐ má? Is eighty RMB OK?	外面七十度。 Wàimian qīshí dù. It's 70 degrees outside.
借给我六十块,可以吗? Jiè gěi wǒ liù shí kuài, kěyǐ ma? Could you lend me sixty RMB?	我妈妈五十岁。 Wǒ māma wǔshí suì. My mom is fifty years old.
我们班有四十个学生。 Wǒmen bān yǒu sìshí ge xuésheng. Our class has forty students.	我需要三十秒。 Wǒ xūyào sānshí miǎo. I need 30 seconds.
我们班只有二十个学生。 Wǒmen bān zhǐyǒu èrshí ge xuésheng. Our class has only twenty students.	现在十点钟。 Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng. It's ten o'clock now.
他爸爸一九八九年来美国。 Tā bàba yī jiǔ bā jiǔ nián lái Měiguó. His dad came to America in 1989.	他住在八楼。 Tā zhùzài bā lóu. He lives on the eighth floor.
我们的公司有七个人。 Wǒmen de gōngsī yǒu qī gè rén. There are seven people in our company.	我女儿六岁。 Wǒ nǚ'ér liù suì. My daughter is six years old.
给我五块钱就好。 Gěi wǒ wǔ kuài jiù hǎo. Give me five RMB, that's fine.	我有四个孩子。 Wǒ yǒu sì gè háizi. I have four children.
他有三个孩子。 Tā yǒu sān ge háizi. He has three children.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.

这个大楼有一百年的历史。
Zhègè dàlóu yǒu yībǎi nián de lìshǐ.

This building has 100 years of history.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is the Numbers 1 to 100 in Chinese.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
yī 一	*èr* 二	*sān* 三	*sì* 四	*wǔ* 五	*liù* 六	*qī* 七	*bā* 八	*jiǔ* 九	*shí* 十

10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
shí 十	*èrshí* 二十	*sānshí* 三十	*sìshí* 四十	*wǔshí* 五十	*liùshí* 六十	*qīshí* 七十	*bāshí* 八十	*jiǔshí* 九十	*yī bǎi* 一百

Some More Numbers Discussed in the Lesson

21
èr shí yī
二十一

23
èr shí sān
二十三

65
liù shí wǔ
六十五

88
bā shí bā
八十八

39
sān shí jiǔ
三十九

44
sì shí sì
四十四

19
shí jiǔ
十九

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Finding Meaning in Numbers

The Chinese are quite superstitious about numbers, believing some to be auspicious, and others to be avoided as very unlucky. This originates from the fact that a lot of Chinese words are homophones. Some numbers have pronunciations that are similar to other words with different meanings-words that have either good or bad connotations.

For example, the number 4 is believed to be very unlucky and avoided whenever possible. The reason is that the pronunciation of the number 4 (四 'sì') in Chinese is very similar in sound to the word for "death" (死 'sǐ'). The words are phonetically identical; they only differ in tone.

On the other hand, the word for 8 (八'bā') sounds very similar to the word for "prosper" or "wealth" (发 'fā'), and therefore is considered very lucky. This is evidenced by the date the

Chinese chose for the Opening Ceremony of the Olympic Games: 2008-08-08.

Because of the supposed auspiciousness of certain numbers, some Chinese people will even pay large sums of money for phone numbers, street addresses, vehicle license plate numbers, or bank account numbers that they feel are lucky.

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp S1 #5 Numbers 100 to 10,000 in Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar

5

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 一百, 二百/ 两百, 四百七十, 六百七十一, 一千, 三千五百九十, 七千八百八十, 一万

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 一百, 二百/ 兩百, 四百七十, 六百七十一, 一千, 三千五百九十, 七千八百八十, 一萬

PINYIN

1. yī bǎi, èr bǎi / liǎng bǎi, sì bǎi qīshí, liù bǎi qīshí yī, yī qiān, sān qiān wǔ bǎi jiǔshí, qī qiān bā bǎi bāshí, yī wàn

ENGLISH

1. 100, 200, 470, 671, 1000, 3590, 7880, 10000

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
一百	一百	yī bǎi	100
二百	二百	èr bǎi	200
两百	兩百	liǎng bǎi	200
四百七十	四百七十	sì bǎi qīshí	470
六百七十一	六百七十一	liù bǎi qīshí yī	671

一千	一千	yī qiān	1000
三千五百九十	三千五百九十	sān qiān wǔ bǎi jiǔshí	3590
七千八百八十	七千八百八十	qī qiān bā bǎi bāshí	7880
一万	一萬	yī wàn	10000

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这个大楼有一百年的历史。 Zhègè dàlóu yǒu yībǎi nián de lìshǐ. This building has 100 years of history.	到机场要二百块。 Dào jī chǎng yào èr bǎi kuài. It's 200 RMB to go to the airport.
我们这里有两百多本书。 Wǒmen zhèlǐ yǒu liǎngbǎi duō běn shū. We have over two hundred books here.	这条裙子四百七十块钱。 Zhè tiáo qúnzi sì bǎi qīshí kuài qián. This skirt is 470 RMB.
这些东西一共是六百七十一块钱。 Zhèxiē dōngxi yīgòng shì liù bǎi qīshí yī kuài qián. These things all together are six hundred and seventy-one RMB.	我的房租一个月一千块钱。 Wǒ de fángzū yī gè yuè yī qiān kuài qián. My rent is 1,000 RMB a month.
我们公司有三千五百九十个员工。 Wǒmen gōngsī yǒu sānqiānwǔbǎijiǔshí gè yuángōng。 Our company has 3590 employees.	七千八百八十个人参加了。 Qīqiān bābǎi bāshí ge rén cānjiā le. 7880 people attended.
买一辆车至少要一萬块钱。 Mǎi yī liàng chē zhìshǎo yào yīwàn kuài qián. It costs at least 10,000 RMB to buy a car.	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is Numbers Larger than 100 in Chinese

---

一百
yī bǎi
"100"
一千
yī qiān
"1,000"
一万
yī wàn
"10,000"

Some More Numbers Discussed in the Lesson

二百
èr bǎi
"200"
两百
liǎng bǎi
"200"

四百七十
sì bǎi qī shí
"470"
六百二十一
liù bǎi èr shí yī
"621"
一千
yī qiān
"1,000"
三千五百九十
sān qiān wǔ bǎi jiǔ shí
"3,590"

七千八百八十

jǐqiān bā bǎi bā shí

"7,880"

一万

yīwàn

"10,000"

一百一十一

yībǎi yī shíyī

"111"

四千

sìqiān

"4,000"

一千五百九十

yīqiān wǔbǎi jiǔ shí

"1,590"

两千四百六十三

liǎng qiān sì bǎi liùshí sān

"2,463"

零

líng

"zero"

二千零九十三

liǎng qiān líng jiǔ shí sān

"2,093"

八千八百八十八

bāqiān bā bǎi bāshí bā

"8,888"

Dates in Chinese

When reading out years, the numbers are simply read as single digits. For example, 2009 is read digit by digit, i.e:

二零零九年

èr líng líng jiǔ nián

(year) "2009"

Language Tip

In Mandarin Chinese, the multiplier 两 (*liǎng*) is used rather than 二 (*èr*) for all numbers greater than 200 with the "2" numeral. For the number 200, 二百 (*èr bǎi*) and 两百 (*liǎng bǎi*) are both acceptable.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #1 Introduction to Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Grammar

1

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
中国	中國	Zhōngguó	China

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Reasons to Learn Chinese

---

Background of the Chinese Language

Chinese is its own language family—about one-fifth of the world's population, or over one billion people, speak some form of Chinese as their native language. Approximately 1.176 billion speakers make for a lot of good conversation.

Chinese is unique also in that it's literally everywhere. Chinese immigrants are interspersed with the population in much of the world. It's a language you don't even need to travel to use.

China is the only country in the world whose literature has been written in one language for more than three thousand consecutive years. The earliest examples of Chinese writing date back to 1200 B.C.

Chinese is its own language family, and there are estimated to be eight thousand dialects of Chinese. Some of the more common of these include Cantonese, Taiwanese, Shanghainese—the list goes on. Anyone who has ever heard some of these dialects spoken can attest to the fact that they are very different from Mandarin; many of them unintelligible to Mandarin speakers.

Though there are tens of thousands of characters, Mandarin Chinese has only four hundred syllables, or individual word sounds. As a result, a single sound can represent more than one hundred different written characters. Tones and the use of compound syllables multiply the number of available word sounds. Most words are made up of two characters, and are therefore two syllables.

About China

China, and Chinese, has thousands of years of history, but due to emigration, Chinese can be found in most places in the world. The Chinese word for China (中国) (*zhong1 guo3*) means, literally, "Center Kingdom." This gives us insight into the reason for the nationalism of the Chinese people, as well as their strong cultural ties.

Where is Chinese Spoken?

Mandarin Chinese is mainly spoken in mainland China and Taiwan, but there are large communities of Mandarin speakers in Hong Kong, Singapore, Malaysia, Macau, the Philippines, Australia, Indonesia, Peru, Canada, the United States of America, and many other regions.

Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macau and Singapore list Mandarin Chinese as one of their official languages.

Some of the Chinese communities in other countries are made up of second-, third- or even fourth-generation immigrants. The Chinese have an uncanny ability to preserve their traditions and keep their communities strong, even abroad. However, over time, language evolves and the Chinese spoken in Malaysia, for example, can be quite different in pronunciation and grammar than that spoken in the mainland.

Pronunciation amongst native Chinese speakers in China can vary a lot as well. Accents and pronunciation of the "sh", "zh" and *pinyin* initials can vary quite a bit. Northern speakers of Chinese curl their tongue a lot more, so the sound is thicker and more resonant. The southern people speak a lot more lightly and with less of the retroflexive sound.

Mandarin in Taiwan is somewhat affected by the Taiwanese dialect; speakers very often mix in Taiwanese dialect expressions and pronunciation with their Mandarin.

There are two different forms of Chinese writing as well. In Taiwan, the traditional form of written Chinese characters is used, as opposed to the simplified form adopted in mainland China. There are more than just a few vocabulary terms that are different than on the mainland, too. In addition, many modern words related to computers, the Internet, and technology are different in Taiwan and the mainland, as these types of words have only been invented in the past decade or so.

Why is it Important?

So why should you learn Chinese? Here are some top reasons...

1. Chinese is the language of nearly one-quarter of the world's population

Speakers of Chinese are spread throughout the globe. Chinese people today have been playing increasingly important roles worldwide.

2. Unlike most languages, Chinese has a unique writing system

This system provides visual comprehensibility and is considered by some to be an art form.

3. Chinese grammar is easy!

4. When you learn Chinese, you also learn how the Chinese think

The structure of Chinese is not only logical, but also pragmatic, and very related to the particular way of Chinese thinking. Learning Chinese opens up the culture of one of the world's oldest civilizations. You are learning much more than just a language. Traditional Chinese culture is interesting and very different from Western culture; from Confucianism and Chan Buddhism to martial arts and Chinese cuisine.

5. China currently boasts the fastest growing economy in the world

China is widely regarded as the potentially biggest global market in the twenty-first century. Proficient speakers of Mandarin Chinese will find jobs in various fields such as business, government, international relations, information technology, tourism, education, translation, and much, much more.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #2 Chinese Writing System

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Grammar

2

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
汉字	漢字	hànzi	Chinese character

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Chinese Writing System

Chinese Uses Written Characters That are Known as 漢字 [汉字] (*hànzi*)

While Chinese characters are often thought of as extremely complex, in fact they are all derived from a couple hundred simple pictographs and ideographs that are assembled in different combinations. Once you get the hang of them, they aren't as difficult to remember as you may think.

All characters are made up of smaller picture elements within the character. Some of these smaller pictures within the character give a hint as to meaning and pronunciation (though not always). The first Chinese characters were simple objects like "human", "hand", "foot", "mountain", "sun", "moon", and "tree". Then, logical combinations of the simple characters followed. Some of these simple characters and logical combinations within the character still remain clear enough to see what they depict. These simple characters also sometimes serve as the root of a more complex character, and are called "radicals."

Most linguists believe that writing was invented in China during the latter half of the second millennium B.C. The earliest recognizable examples of written Chinese date from 1500-950 B.C. (Shang dynasty). Characters were inscribed on bones and shells that were used for divination.

The traditional form of Chinese characters was widely used up until the mid-twentieth century. Most of the simplified Chinese characters in use today were the result of simplifications made by the government of China in the 1950s and 60s. The simplified characters have a lot fewer strokes and certain parts of some characters were completely eliminated. The simplified characters are also used in Singapore, but in Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macau, and Malaysia the traditional characters are still used.

Chinese is famed for its huge number of characters, and some dictionaries contain more than 50,000 words as entries. But the good news is that a large number of those are rarely-used variants, accumulated throughout history. This means that workable literacy in the Chinese language only requires knowledge of between three to four thousand characters.

Elements That Make Up a Chinese Word

Chinese verbs and adjectives generally consist of one character (syllable) but nouns often consist of two, three, or more characters (syllables).

When written on the page, each character is given exactly the same amount of space, no matter how complex it is or how many strokes it contains. There are no spaces between characters and the characters that make up compound words are not grouped together, so when reading Chinese, you have to figure out what the characters mean and how to pronounce them, and also which characters belong together.

Pronunciation

Pinyin is a phonetic system used to teach standard pronunciation of Mandarin Chinese, to spell Chinese names in foreign publications, and to enter Chinese characters on computers.

Unlike in European languages, initials and finals—not consonants and vowels—are the elements that make up a word in *pinyin*. Nearly every Chinese syllable is spelled with one initial sound followed by one final sound.

Though *pinyin* uses the Roman alphabet, and some of the sounds are similar to their English counterparts, some of the letters and combinations of letters have pronunciations quite different from English. *Pinyin* cannot be read like English, even though it uses the Roman alphabet.

There are only about four hundred different combinations of initials and finals in Chinese; therefore there are many homophones. Of course, each Chinese character can also have four possible tones, so that adds to the amount of individual sounds. For all the possible combinations of sounds, you can visit the *pinyin* chart at ChineseClass101.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #3 Chinese Grammar

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar

3

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我学中文。
2. 我喝茶.
3. 我教中文。
4. 我不学中文。
5. 我去公园。
6. 明天我去公园。
7. 现在我去公园。
8. 昨天我去公园了。
9. 一本书
10. 四个朋友
11. 那(一)张纸

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我學中文。
2. 我喝茶。
3. 我教中文。

CONT'D OVER

4. 我不學中文。

5. 我去公園。

6. 明天我去公園。

7. 現在我去公園。

8. 昨天我去公園了。

9. 一本書

10. 四個朋友

11. 那(一)張紙

PINYIN

1. Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.

2. Wǒ hē chá.

3. Wǒ jiāo Zhōngwén.

4. Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén.

5. Wǒ qù gōngyuán.

6. Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán.

7. Xiànzài wǒ qù gōngyuán.

CONT'D OVER

8. Zuótiān wǒ qù gōngyuán le.

9. yī běn shū

10. sì ge péngyou

11. nà (yī) zhāng zhǐ

ENGLISH

1. I study Chinese.

2. I drink tea.

3. I teach Chinese.

4. I don't study Chinese.

5. I'm going to the park.

6. Tomorrow I'm going to the park.

7. Now I'm going to the park.

8. Yesterday I went to the park.

9. one book

10. four friends

CONT'D OVER

11. that piece of paper

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
一	一	yī	one
本	本	běn	(measure word)
书	書	shū	book
四	四	sì	four
个	個	ge	(measure word)
朋友	朋友	péngyou	friend
那	那	nà	that
张	張	zhāng	(measure word for paper like objects)
昨天	昨天	zuótiān	yesterday
现在	現在	xiànzài	now
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
学	學	xué	to study, to learn
中文	中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
喝	喝	hē	to drink
茶	茶	chá	tea
教	教	jiāo	to teach
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
去	去	qù	to go

公园	公園	gōngyuán	park
纸	紙	zhǐ	paper

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
意大利很漂亮。 Yìdàlì hěn piàoliang. Italy is very beautiful.	我喜欢看书。 Wǒ xǐhuān kàn shū. I like to read books.
我有四个孩子。 Wǒ yǒu sì gè háizi. I have four children.	我有四个孩子。 Wǒ yǒu sì gè háizi. I have four children.
他是我的朋友。 Tā shì wǒ de péngyǒu. He is my friend.	那是什么? Nà shì shénme? What is that?
一张票多少钱? Yī zhāng piào duō shǎo qián ? How much is one ticket?	昨天我去公园了。 Zuótiān wǒ qù gōngyuán le. Yesterday I went to the park.
现在我去公园。 Xiànzài wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park now.	明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.
我学中文。 Wǒ xué Zhōngwén. I study Chinese.	我不学中文。 Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén. I don't study Chinese.

女人喝了水。 nǚrén hē le shuǐ. The woman drank water.	我喝茶。 Wǒ hē chá. I drink tea.
我教中文。 Wǒ jiāo Zhōngwén. I teach Chinese.	我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.
我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	昨天我去公园了。 Zuótiān wǒ qù gōngyuán le. Yesterday I went to the park.
给我一张纸。 Gěi wǒ yī zhāng zhǐ. Give me a piece of paper.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

中文 (*Zhōngwén*) "Chinese" (language). There are a few terms for the Chinese language used in Chinese. One is 中文 (*Zhōngwén*) as spoken of in this lesson. Other terms include: 普通话 (*Pǔtōnghuà*) 国语 (*Guóyǔ*) 汉语 (Hànyǔ)

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Chinese Grammar

Grammar Pep Talk

When learning a language, grammar can be pretty overwhelming. Well the good thing is, compared to learning about Chinese characters, we have good news for you...Chinese

grammar is a lot simpler than that of many other languages. If you hate conjugating verbs, or trying to wrap your head around the idea that words have genders, or can't roll your "r's," Chinese is the language for you.

Here is your head start to Chinese grammar. No long, drawn-out, technical explanations of grammar that aren't going to help you speak Chinese any faster anyway. We're about to tell you what you need to know right off the bat to give you a head start on Chinese.

Now, first of all, don't believe the rumor circulating that Chinese has no grammar. Let's just call that an urban legend. Come on, nothing can be that easy. However, the gods of language were kind to Chinese, knowing all it had to contend with (tones, characters, etc.). It's definitely got grammar, but not the kind you have to dread.

Chinese Verbs

Maybe one of the best things about Chinese grammar is that Chinese verbs are not inflected, meaning that they don't change form. Only one form of each verb exists; there is no conjugation. It doesn't matter who is talking, when they are talking about, or who they are talking to, the verb is the same. Now that is a breath of fresh air for language students!

Word Order

Since there is no conjugation of verbs in Chinese, it means that other things will tell us the things that verb conjugation normally tells us. In Chinese this is something that is very important: word order. It's a pretty big deal, as word order is often your only clue to figuring out who is doing what.

In normal Chinese declarative sentences, word order is the same as that used in normal English declarative sentences, being:

subject - verb - object

For Example:

1. 我学中文。
   Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.
   "I study Chinese."

Negation of Verbs

Negation occurs before the verb and any prepositional phrase. So, for the above example, to make the sentence negative, you just add a negation word, 不 (*bu4)*, in front of the verb.

For Example:

1. 我不学中文。
   Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén.
   "I don't study Chinese."

Expressing Tense

Now, don't get tense. Usually the thought of verb tenses is enough to warrant an immediate trip to the Chinese masseuse to calm us down. Relax! Chinese verbs don't change tense. Rather, we use time words to indicate whether something will happen tomorrow, is happening now, or happened yesterday. The Chinese language relies heavily on the use of adverbs to communicate what English and many other languages do with different verb tenses.

Let's take the words **"**to go**"** for example. In Chinese, this is 去 (*qu4*). Rather than messing around with the verb itself, Chinese will just add adverbs to let you know when an action was, is, or is going to take place.

For Example:

1. 我去公园。
   Wǒ qù gōngyuán.
   "I go park." (literally)

Now we get the essence of what is going on here, right? I...go...park. Context will tell us a lot about the time factor. In Chinese, it's really easy to make it clear that it's future...just add a time word. Maybe you will go tomorrow? Then you simply add **"**tomorrow.**"**

For Example:

1. 明天我去公园。
   Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán.
   "Tomorrow I go park."

To emphasize that this is happening now? I just add **"now."**

1. 现在我去公园。
   Xiànzài wǒ qù gōngyuán
   "Now I go park."

And if I went yesterday?

1. 昨天我去公园了。
   Zuótiān wǒ qù gōngyuán le.
   "Yesterday I went to the park."

Now of course life gets more complicated than this, and there are other ways of expressing tense in Chinese, such as expressing past experience, and such things. These will come later, but we promise they're not much harder than this!

Measure Words / Classifiers

Now, after all that easiness, you can't hold measure words against the Chinese. In fact, in English, we sometimes count in units, as well—we just don't notice.

1. a pair of socks
2. two loaves of bread
3. three cases of beer

In Chinese, however, these measure or "counting" words must be used when objects are enumerated, whether it's just one person or 1.3 billion people.

1. 一本书
   (yī běn shū)
   "one book/a book"
2. 四个朋友
   (sì gè péngyou)
   "four friends"

3. **那(一)张纸**
   nà yī zhāng zhǐ
   "that (one) piece of paper"

Generally the format is number + measure word + object. When the number is "1", however, it's OK to omit the number.

Note that if you just say 一书 **(*yī shū*)** or 四朋友 **(*sì péngyou*)** it's incorrect.

The challenge with measure words is that there are a lot of them, and certain ones go with certain nouns. Sometimes they follow a rhyme or reason, like the measure word we learned here 张 (***zhāng***); it is frequently paired with flat objects. But don't stress—in time, you will get used to the more commonly heard measure words.

And here's a little measure word bonus: there is one measure word used way more than the others. It is 个 (*ge*). It can be your little measure word crutch to use until you know the more specific measure words for things. 个 (*ge*) is kind of the fall-back-on measure word. It's better to use *ge* than nothing at all, so when you're at a loss for a measure word, 个 (*ge*) will often do the trick.

Pronouns

Pronouns are that small class of words found in many languages that are used as replacements or substitutes for nouns and noun phrases. Things like: I, you, he, this, etc.

Chinese has first, second, and third person pronouns. They have singular (I, you, he, she, and it) and plural forms (we, you, and they). The same pronouns are used for subject, object, possession, etc. So the word for 我 (*wǒ*) doesn't change, but it can mean either "I" or "me" depending on its position in the sentence or context.

To make a pronoun plural, you simply add the suffix 们 (*men*) to the pronoun.

Gender isn't reflected in the spoken language. However, the written form of the word has a slight difference that tells you if the person referred to is male or female. Here are some of the pronouns in Chinese:

我 (*wǒ*) "I"
我们 (*wǒmen*) "we", "us"
你 (*nǐ*) "you"

你们 (***nǐmen***) **"you" (plural)**
他/她/它 (***tā / tā / tā***) **"he"/"she"/"it"**
他们/她们/它们 (***tāmen / tāmen / tāmen***) **"they"**

Pluralizing Nouns

In the vast majority of situations, nouns in Chinese don't change when they are plural.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #4 Chinese Pronunciation

CONTENTS

2 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Pronunciation

Introduction to Chinese Pronunciation

Each Chinese character can be said to be a syllable. These syllables can be a stand-alone word, or they can be grouped together to make compound words. Each syllable, or character, in Chinese is made up of an initial and a final sound. These initials and finals can be combined to make up over four hundred unique word sounds in Chinese. Since there are only four hundred or so individual possible word sounds in Chinese, there are a lot of homophones—the context or the written character can tell you which word is being used.

Chinese uses a phonetic system called *pinyin* to aid learners of Chinese in pronunciation. This *pinyin* uses Romanized letters to represent the sounds of Chinese.

There are twenty-one initials in Chinese. This is the sound the word starts with. There are about thirty-eight combinations of final sounds.

Some of the More Challenging Sounds of Chinese

Some of the letters used to represent the sounds of Chinese are similar in pronunciation to their English counterparts. However, there are some that are different. The ones that give some people trouble sometimes are as follows:

Z: the difference with the English "z" is that this sound is made with your tongue touching the back of your upper teeth. This results in a more "dz" sound.

C: sometimes confused with the "z" sound, the "c" is aspirated whereas the "z" is not. Aspirated means that you let air out when producing this sound. The tongue touches the back of the upper teeth here too.

Zh: to make this sound, the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge. It has a similar sound to the English "j", but the retroflexive nature makes it much thicker, as you can hear.

CH: is similar to the English "Ch", however the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge, as it is in the "zh".

SH: is similar to the English "sh" however the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge, as it is in the "zh" and "ch".

X: it also seems similar to the English "sh" but it is in fact produced quite differently. You raise your tongue up and let the air squeeze out.

Q: it is in the range of the English "ch" but different in that it is also produced in the same way as the x. You raise your tongue and let the air squeeze out.

R: this one is tough. Nothing like the English "r", so don't be fooled by the use of the letter "r". Again, curled tongue, a "zee-ish" phenomenon.

There are only six vowels used in *pinyin*, but they are combined to produce a lot of different sounds. You can listen to all of them by visiting ChineseClass101.com, where we have a *pinyin* chart with clickable MP3 records of each of the sounds, to aid you in perfecting the pronunciation.

U: one of the sounds that is a little more challenging for English speakers is the "u" sound. This "u" sound is quite a nasal sound. It is said to be similar to the French "u" and is made by pronouncing an "i", then rounding the mouth.

The Tones

The first tone is high and steady: *mā*

The second tone is a rising tone: *má* and has intonation similar to that used in English to indicate a question, i.e. "huh?"

The third tone dips down slightly in the middle: *mǎ*. You can feel a slight vibration at the base of your throat when you are doing it correctly.

The fourth tone is falling, and falling fast. Sounds slightly angrier than the rest. *mà*.

And then we have the Switzerland of tones, being **the neutral tone**. Which is a relief. Because it's just, well, neutral. No tone. *ma*.

The tone change rules:

Tone changes for third tone:

There are some special circumstances that occur with certain combinations of tones that are

together in a compound word or sentence.

When two or more third-tone characters occur in a row, the last of these remains a third tone, while the one(s) before it change to the second tone. If there are more than two third tones in a row, the final third tone in each series remains a third tone, while the rest become second tone.

Tone changes for 不 bù:

The character 不 (*bù*), which a negator, or means "no" or "not", is normally a fourth tone character, but when it comes before another fourth tone character, it changes to the second tone.

Therefore, instead of saying *bù shì* and *bù yaò*, you would say *bú shì* and *bú yaò*.

Tone changes for 一 yī:

The word "*yi*" is 1st tone when used as part of a number: 一二三, 十一 (*yī, èr, sǎn; shíyī*)
The word "yi" is 4th tone when preceding 1st, 2nd, or 3rd tones: 一起 (yìqǐ)
The word "*yí*" is 2nd tone when preceding a 4th tone: 一共 (*yígòng*)

One of the best ways to get Chinese pronunciation down pat is to listen and repeat, listen and repeat. Which is something you can do on at ChineseClass101.com. We have audio files of native speakers, and even a voice recorder for you to see how you sound in comparison.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

China is a vast country, even linguistically, therefore there is a large diversity in accents.

One difference is that Taiwan doesn't use the neutral tone, therefore the intonation of the Chinese spoken there is a little different.

Further, certain words are pronounced in different tones, depending on the region. Due to the influence of local dialects, there is also some variation in the pronunciation of the inital and final sounds of Chinese, however your ear will quickly become accustomed to the variations with exposure to them.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #5 Top 5 Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

5

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 谢谢
2. 听不懂
3. 你好
4. 不知道
5. 不好意思
6. 让一下

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 謝謝
2. 聽不懂
3. 你好
4. 不知道
5. 不好意思
6. 讓一下

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. xièxie
2. tīng bù dǒng
3. nǐhǎo
4. bù zhīdào
5. bùhǎoyìsi
6. ràng yīxià

ENGLISH

1. thanks
2. to not understand
3. hello
4. don't know
5. sorry
6. let (me) through

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
谢谢	謝謝	xièxie	thanks

听不懂	聽不懂	tīng bù dǒng	to not understand
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello
不知道	不知道	bù zhīdào	to not know
不好意思	不好意思	bùhǎoyìsi	I'm sorry
让一下	讓一下	ràng yīxià	let (me) through

SAMPLE SENTENCES

谢谢你帮我那么多忙。 Xièxiè nǐ bāng wǒ nàme duō máng. Thank you for helping me with so many things.	你说的话我听不懂。 Nǐ shuō de huà wǒ tīngbùdǒng. I don't understand what you are saying.
你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.	我不知道这个地方的名字。 Wǒ bù zhīdào zhè ge dìfang de míngzi. I don't know the name of this place.
哦，不好意思，请坐。 ō, bùhǎoyìsi, qǐngzuò. Oh, sorry! Please sit.	不好意思，让一下。 Bùhǎoyìsi, ràng yīxià. Sorry, can you let me through?

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Five Must-Know Chinese Phrases

---

The following are five essential phrases guaranteed to be the best thing you ever learned in Chinese:

1. 谢谢 (*xièxie*) "Thanks." The Chinese aren't big on "please," but they love thank you so much that they'll often hit you with a barrage of it, "*xiexiexiexiexiexiexiexie*." True, sometimes

it's in a way to get rid of you...sometimes it's in genuine thanks, and sometimes it's because they don't know what the heck you are talking about. But nonetheless, it's the universal word that means gratitude. We'll leave the cultural lesson of discerning what they are actually showing gratitude for, up to you.

2. 听不懂 (*tīngbùdǒng*) "I don't understand what you are saying." This phrase is going to be your best friend, go-to and solace. When the barrage of Chinese follows your perfectly accented "ni hao," this phrase, immediately upon being uttered, will instantly replace any looks of irritation, impatience, or xenophobia with something else: ill-concealed laughter, perhaps countenances of compassion, and an immediate switch to the language that transcends all national, political and cultural boundaries…*Charades*.

3. 你好 (*nǐhǎo*) If you don't know it yet, we don't know where you've been. But we would be remiss if we didn't teach you hello. *Ni hao* literally means "you good." Not a bad way to greet someone.

4. 不知道 (*bù zhīdào*) "I don't know." You may hear this phrase more than use it, however learn from the Chinese how to *bu zhidao* every situation you wish to evade, play dumb about, or avoid.

5. 不好意思 (*bùhǎoyìsi*) "Sorry." You're likely going to be needing to apologize a lot, what with tone errors that change your intended meaning from a polite query of "May I ask" into "Please, kiss me." We're equipping you well to ward off face slaps. In fact, you can just throw this word out at random, just to be on the safe side of etiquette. *Buhaoyisi* literally means "bad feeling", and can be used to apologize to all the dainty toes your oversized foreign feet will step on in the crowded subway, to repent over some cultural faux pas you likely don't know you've committed, or to just curry favor, in general.

让一下 (*ràng yīxià*) "Let me through." Buhaoyisi's slightly stronger cousin. Use this when you're trapped in a subway car and can't get out, or stymied in your efforts to crowd-worm through a city of 18 million people. 让一下 (*ràng yīxià*) is guaranteed to have people jumping out of the way, parting the Red Sea, or doing whatever it takes to let the foreign devil through!

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #6
Test Your China Knowledge

CONTENTS

2 Grammar
3 Cultural Insight

6

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Testing Your Knowledge About China

---

This lesson will build your basic knowledge of China by quizzing you on 5 areas of knowledge: Geography, Pop Culture, Travel, Economics and Myth Busting

1) What percentage of China's 1.3 billion people live in urban areas?

A) 10 percent B) 40 percent C) 50 percent D) 90 percent

Answer: B) 40 percent. It is estimated that by 2010 it will exceed 50 percent. The population of Shanghai alone is roughly equivalent to the entire population of Portugal and Switzerland combined. China's population accounts for around a fifth of the world's population, but has less than one tenth of the world's arable land. Furthermore, almost the entire population lives in the well-watered eastern half of the country, where virtually every square centimeter of farmland has been developed.

2) China has the following number of provinces:

A) 22 B) 23 C) 34

Answer: Actually, depending on who you ask, all three are correct: 22 if your politics say not to include Taiwan, 23 if you include Taiwan, and 34 if you include Taiwan, the 5 autonomous regions, 2 special districts and 4 municipalities.

3) Following are three famous Chinese people. One is a famous singer, one a politician, and one a sports star. Match the person with their profession:

王菲 (Wáng Fēi) *(singer)*

刘翔 (Liú Xiáng) *(athlete)*

胡锦涛 (Hú Jǐntāo) *(politician)*

4) Rank in correct order the most popular travel destinations in China.

1) Beijing 2) Xi'an 3) Shanghai

5) What year did the economic reforms that transformed China's economy into a market-oriented economy take place in?

1978

6) Debunking a myth about China.

Fortune cookies originated in China. True or False?

Answer: False! They were actually an American invention. Makoto Hagiwara of the Japanese Tea Garden in San Francisco is reported to have been the first person in America to have served the American version of the cookie when he did so at the tea garden in 1890s or early 1900s. The cookie was in fact modeled after a Japanese cracker that contained a slip of paper.

In fact, one Brooklyn-based fortune cookie manufacturer tried to introduce fortune cookies to the Chinese market, even building the first fortune cookie factory in China; however, they didn't really take off there. The owner stated that it seemed like a good idea at the time, but that fortune cookies turned out to be 'too American'. To this day, you will never find a fortune cookie at the end of your meal in China.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

More on Geography: Being the country with the third largest land area in the world, China has a diverse eco-system ranging from sea level in the east right up to the peak of Mount Everest on the border with Nepal.

Climate: The climate is also extremely varied. Ranging from subarctic temperatures in the most northern provinces, to monsoons and subtropical regions in the south, China even has a tropical island.

The Economy: Did you know? Over the past seventeen years, China's economy has grown, on average, by more than 10 percent per year.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #7 Chinese Cuisine

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

7

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 小笼包
2. 醋
3. 油条
4. 豆浆
5. 羊肉串
6. 拉面
7. 点心

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 小籠包
2. 醋
3. 油條
4. 豆漿
5. 羊肉串
6. 拉麵
7. 點心

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. xiǎolóngbāo
2. cù
3. yóutiáo
4. dòujiāng
5. yángròu chuàn
6. lāmiàn
7. diǎnxīn

ENGLISH

1. steamed soup dumplings
2. vinegar
3. fried dough stick
4. soy milk
5. lamb kebab
6. fresh handmade noodle
7. dimsum

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
小笼包	小籠包	xiǎolóngbāo	steamed soup dumplings
醋	醋	cù	vinegar
油条	油條	yóutiáo	fried dough stick
豆浆	豆漿	dòujiāng	soy milk
羊肉串儿	羊肉串兒	yángròu chuànr	lamb kebab
拉面	拉麵	lāmiàn	fresh handmade noodle
点心	點心	diǎnxīn	dimsum

SAMPLE SENTENCES

小笼包是这边的特菜.
Xiǎolóngbāo shì zhèbiān de tècài.

Soup dumplings are the specialty here.

你要加醋.
Nǐ yào jiā cù.

You have to add vinegar.

油条是早上吃的.
Yóutiáo shì zǎoshang chī de.

You eat fried dough sticks in the morning.

豆浆很营养.
Dōujiāng hěn yíngyǎng.

Soy milk is very nutritious.

他做的羊肉串儿很好吃。
Tā zuò de yángròuchuànr hěn hǎochī.

His lamb kebabs are very delicious.

拉面你吃过吗?
Lāmiàn nǐ chī guò ma?

Have you eaten hand-pulled noodles before?

香港的點心很好吃.
Xiānggǎng de diǎnxīn hěn hǎochī.

Dimsum in Hong Kong is very delicious.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Cuisine

Basics of Chinese Cuisine

Many people are surprised on their arrival in China to find that what they thought was Chinese food is nowhere to be found. If you're looking for General Tso's chicken, Chop Suey, or fortune cookies...give up.

Another challenge is that the names of Chinese dishes, even in Chinese, can be very cryptic, making ordering a challenge, even if you find a menu with English translations. Chinese dish names are generally completely irrelevant to the ingredients. Cooks tend to try to come up with short, poetic names for their dishes; some with historical, geographical and political references, some with origins from Chinese fairy tales and folk tales.

For example, knowing what one does about the Chinese affinity for 'alternative' meats, what impression does a menu item called Lion's Head leave you with? Is it really...lion's head? No. It is big meat ball. Are the Chinese into insects? Ants Climbing Trees is another popular dish in China. But have no fear—is just sautéed vermicelli with spicy minced pork.

Rice is generally a staple of the south, with noodles featuring in as well. Northern China features dishes made with wheat flour, such as noodles, dumplings, steamed buns, and thin pancakes.

Where meat is often the focal point of many western meals, it is the starch—rice or noodle—that is the starting point and palette for Chinese meals.

Regional Cuisines

There are eight main regional cuisines in China; the flavors vary from hot and spicy, to sweet and oily, even pungent and sour. The main cooking methods employed are stir-frying, deep-frying, steaming and stewing. Chinese kitchens rarely have an oven, though there are various specialties that are roasted, like Peking Duck.

Chinese cooks place a lot of emphasis on the presentation of their final product. The dish should have a pleasing appearance with an appealing balance of colors, textures and tastes.

Famous Seasonal Dishes

The famed Hairy Crab of Shanghai comes into season in October to early November. A local

delicacy that is exported around the country and beyond, it is actually a fresh-water crab. One of the most savored parts of the hairy crab are the sperm in the males, and the eggs in the females.

Hot pot is a warming food that is popular in the winter. A large pot of broth is set to boil, and the diners cook their own meats, vegetables and seafood by boiling them in the soup.

The many festivals of China have specific foods that go along with them. In mid-to-late September, the mid-autumn festival is celebrated. Mooncakes are ubiquitous at this time of year, and are gifted and re-gifted amongst friends, relatives and from employers to employees. Mooncakes are round, like the moon, and have a pastry-like crust with a flavored filling; from lotus paste to sweet red bean; even salty egg yolks.

Furthermore, all Chinese festivals, and there are many, have a variety of foods associated with them, and these will vary from region to region.

Table Etiquette

Chinese food is generally prepared in bite-sized pieces that can easily be picked up with chopsticks. A knife at the table is considered barbaric.

It is a demonstration of utmost hospitality and respect for the host to dish food onto his guest's plate. Often, this will be done repeatedly, despite futile pleads on the eater's part about being full. It is fine to leave some food in one's plate, because if one cleans the plate, it is a signal to the host to put more food onto it!

In China, dishes are served communally, and there are no serving spoons. The diners all use their own chopsticks to dip into the dishes. Never stab your chopsticks into your rice bowl and leave them there. This is the worst of all Chinese dining faux pas, as it is related to a funeral tradition.

If a Chinese person invites you to dinner at a restaurant, it generally means that they are treating. Therefore, if you invite a Chinese person out to eat in a restaurant, it may be expected that you are getting the bill.

Food as Medicine

From bird's nest soup to deer antlers, Chinese food therapy dates back as early as 2000 B.C. The Chinese believe that there are foods that increase body heat (yang), and those that cool the body, and that for good health, a balance of these elements must be achieved through diet.

Top 5 Chinese Foods to Try

小籠包 (xiǎolóngbāo) - Probably the most famous Shanghai dish: these small steamed dumplings are steamed in a basket and stuffed with meat and a tasty broth inside. The connoisseur bites a little hole into them first, sips the broth, then dips them in dark vinegar (醋 cu) to season the meat inside.

油条 (yóutiáo) lit. oil stick - Long, deep-fried donut. A very popular breakfast in China. Typically consumed in the morning with soy milk (dou jiang 豆浆), the youtiao is a long, deep-fried stick of dough.

羊肉串 (yángròu chuàn) Barbecued meat skewers (Typically from street vendors) - Generally made from lamb, these Xinjiang-style meat kebabs are delicious.

拉面 (lāmiàn) Lanzhou-style lamian - Fresh hand-pulled noodles; look for a tiny restaurants with staff in Muslim dress, white fez-like hats on the men and head scarves on the women. These fresh noodles have a flavor very atypical of most noodle dishes you will find in China.

点心 (diǎnxīn) Cantonese / Guangzhou / Hong Kong-style Dim Sum - The small snacks usually eaten for lunch/breakfast in these southern regions of China and in Hong Kong are a highlight.

Top 5 Chinese Foods for the Brave

Stinky Tofu - Locals will forever be asking you if you've tried this fermented tofu specialty, so you might as well cave and do the deed. Think 'french cheese' rather than 'smelly socks' and you just might enjoy it.

Century Eggs - They're not really a century old, though they do look it. Black, gelatinous, strong salty flavor...these delicacies are preserved in salt and ash for 100 days.

Drunken shrimp - Shrimp marinated live, and served live. Watch out for the splashing wine. You eat them after they drown.

Seahorse - Though it feels somehow wrong on many levels to eat cute animals that feature in Disney cartoons, at least you'll have something to write home about.

Bird's Nest Soup - Don't let the saliva base of this broth turn you off from this healthful aphrodisiac.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #8 Chinese Society

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

8

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Society and the Way People Live in China

---

Major Cities and How they Work

Shanghai

Shanghai is a city full of contrasts and very representative of the ‘New China’. It is the largest city in China in terms of population, and one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world, with over twenty million people. Located on China's central eastern coast at the mouth of the Yangtze River, Shanghai is the largest center of commerce and finance in mainland China, and has been described as the "showpiece" of the world's fastest-growing economy. The city’s population is diverse, being made up of native Shanghainese people, millions of migrant workers from other provinces of China, and a large expat community.

Shanghai offers the tourist a unique mix of old colonialism and cutting edge Chinese modernism. There is the paradox of the Bund: stoic European-built bank buildings quietly face the spectacle of the new Shanghai: the flashing and lit-up Pudong on the other side of the river. There are glimpses of old Shanghai still thriving in some of the more historical neighborhoods, however development is causing displacement for many who lived in humble housing in inner city locales.

Beijing

Beijing is also a city of contrasts. The political, educational and cultural center of China, the history of Beijing can be traced back over 3,000 years. With such historical relics as the Forbidden City, the Ming Tombs, and the Great Wall in close proximity, Beijing is a place one can get in touch with the China of old. However, with the recent economic progress and the frenzy of new construction and infrastructure for the 2008 Olympics, Beijing is now a changed city. Many of the old hutong areas have been demolished to make way for progress.

With that said…the number one thing most big cities in China have in common is that they are generally crowded, polluted and hectic. The weather is often hazy, due to pollution; blue skies are a rare sight. The Chinese have a word that means ‘noisy, crowded and lively’, and this is how they like their city environment. Any time of day you can get food and find people out and about. However with crowds can also come conflict, so be aware that you may encounter noisy street arguments, jostling crowds and dirty streets. Soak it all up as part of the culture of

a Chinese city.

In general, the big cities of China are very safe, except for the menace of the occasional pickpocket.

Family Life

Families in China are generally still quite traditional, and the family is a focal point of life. Most holidays center around family gatherings and meals, and filial piety is an important and still is a very valid part of Chinese society. In many cases, adult Chinese children will live with their parents (if their parents live in the same city), with the parents aiding them with household duties such as cooking and parenting. Thus, though China is modernizing very quickly, traditional family values are still very strong.

Nowadays in China, as a result of the one-child policy, most families only have one child. Therefore, many Chinese will be quite close with their extended families; often they refer to their cousins as their brothers or sisters. Divorce is becoming more common amongst the younger generation, but it is still looked upon with disfavor. Many of the one-child children are of marrying age now, and many blame rising divorce rates on this, feeling that children raised as only children often turn out to be more selfish and intolerant as adults.

Dating culture is not that developed in China; many Chinese people will still find a suitable mate through matchmakers, or through formal introductions to potential partners through relatives and friends. Generally, the marrying age in cities is older, however there is still a lot of pressure placed upon young people by their parents to marry and start having children by the time they are thirty years old.

Work Culture and Economy

China's economy is ranked number three in the world and is strong in manufacturing, being called by some 'the world's workshop'. Almost every major multinational company not only has an office in China; they deem China as vital to their global corporate strategies. Though foreign companies account for a lot of business in China, the State-owned companies continued to dominate the list of the biggest companies in China, taking the top ten spots. Some well-known multinational companies in China are Boeing, Volkswagon, Microsoft and Nokia.

In Chinese cities, there are different types of work culture. Those working in large companies find their careers revolve around corporate culture, and most people feel that working for a multinational company carries with it some kind of status, whereas in reality it often means

long hours, politics, and tedious climbing of the corporate ladder. In a multinational environment, the corporate culture will tend to be influenced somewhat by that of where the company is based.

Working for a state-owned enterprise or a joint-venture company can be quite different, with some companies having a corporate culture with influences left over from the pre-reform days. In these environments, communication can be difficult and the 'boss' is all-powerful, no one will dare to criticize or make suggestions. At times employees are at the beck and call of their bosses; no matter if it's the weekend or evenings, an employee must be ready to serve his '*laoban*' at all times.

On the other hand, many Chinese have an affinity for doing business, and are entrepreneurs. In Chinese business, relationships are everything...relatives, friends, former classmates...all will cooperate with people they know. The Chinese have a word for this, '*guanxi'*, which means 'relationships' or 'who you know'. In China, the success of your business can be dependant to a large degree on the power or scope of your '*guanxi*'. Most business transactions are finalized very differently than in the west. A deal is made only after much eating, drinking, and camaraderie, rather than in a boardroom.

Politics

China is formally known as a single-party socialist republic. The leadership of the Communist Party is elected in the Constitution of the People's Republic of China. State power within the People's Republic of China (PRC) is exercised through the Communist Party of China, the Central People's Government and their provincial and local counterparts.

The president of China is Xi Jin Ping (习近平)

It was only thirty years ago that China started on the road that has made into a powerful economic force on a world scale. Deng Ziaoping took China in a very different direction than the one it had been taking. Thirty years later the country is almost completely transformed, politically and especially economically. China, along with its politics, is changing rapidly.

Generational Trends

China's society has gone through great changes and upheavals in the past generation alone. Therefore, some generational gap is inevitable. The parents of the current generation of young adults grew up under Mao; they experienced famine and political instability. Some missed out on education because of the policies of the Cultural Revolution. In contrast,

China's young people today live in an environment of tremendous economic growth and social change, high technology, and rigorous education requirements.

Communication is a factor as well. The older generation of Chinese parents pay a lot of attention to matters such as nutrition, clothes, and performance at school, however there is somewhat of a gap between children and parents in Chinese society when it comes to communication about more intimate or personal matters.

A clash between tradition and modern influences is also noticeable in purchasing habits, career pursuits, and daily interaction between child and elders. Young people prefer to spend their money on name brand clothing and accessories, travel and entertainment, whereas the older generation believes in saving at a good portion of one's income. This can lead to conflict, as parents will often be quite opinionated and interfering about these matters, even when their child is working and married themselves.

Generally, the older generation grew up in difficult times, whereas the new younger generation are mostly only children who have been treated somewhat like 'little emperors', and tend to be somewhat spoiled and pampered by their parents.

In spite of this, cultural roots still run strong in China, and filial piety is still important and generally young people are still spend time with their families. Many children will live with their parents till they get married, and after getting married, the parents will often move in or spend a lot of time helping when the grandchildren come along.

Modern Societal Trends

Traditionally, women over the age of twenty-three and men over twenty-five have been regarded as "behind schedule" in marriage. However, nowadays, the average age of marriage is getting later and later, and more people are remaining single into their thirties, even when faced with parental pressure. The view of young people towards marriage has changed much in recent times in China; it is no longer viewed as a purely financial arrangement or social task. As a result, more and more young people are choosing who and when they will marry.

- At present there are 130 million people aged sixty or over in China. They account for about 10 percent of the total population. At the current time, only 25 per cent of the labor force in China enjoy pension insurance of some kind. The scale of families is getting smaller, and at times this poses a great test to the traditional Chinese value of families supporting the elderly.

- The old-generation habit of living frugally has been given way to the popular credit consumption pursued by the new generation, pushing forward the quiet advent of credit consumption age.

- The famous one-child policy is still in effect in China, however due to declining birth rates in urban areas and an aging work force, couples in certain urban areas that satisfy the criteria are now allowed to have two children. (i.e. both parents to be are natives of Shanghai, and are only children themselves).

- The sex ratio trend in China is giving rise to a generation of restless young men who will not find mates. History, biology, and sociology all suggest that these “surplus males” may generate high levels of crime and social disorder. In 1993 and 1994, more than 121 boys were born in China for every 100 baby girls. The normal ratio at birth is around 105. China’s gender ratio for newborn babies in 2005 was 118 boys for 100 girls. In some regions, the figure has reached 130 newborn boys for every 100 girls. Several studies have hypothesized female infanticide, sex-selective abortion, the under-reporting of female births, or female adoption as plausible immediate causes for the rise in the sex ratio at birth in China.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #9 Important Holidays

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

9

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 春节
2. 恭喜发财
3. 新年快乐
4. 中秋节
5. 国庆节
6. 端午节

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 春節
2. 恭喜發財
3. 新年快樂
4. 中秋節
5. 國慶節
6. 端午節

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. Chūnjié
2. gōngxǐfācái
3. xīnnián kuàilè
4. Zhōngqiūjié
5. Guóqìngjié
6. Duānwǔjié

ENGLISH

1. Spring Festival
2. congratulations
3. happy new year
4. Mid-Autumn Festival
5. National Day
6. Dragon Boat Festival

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
春节	春節	Chūnjié	Spring Festival

恭喜发财	恭喜發財	gōngxǐfācái	Wishing you riches! (New Year's greeting)
新年快乐	新年快樂	xīnnián kuàilè	happy new year
国庆节	國慶節	Guóqìngjié	National Day
端午节	端午節	Duānwǔjié	Dragon Boat Festival
中秋节	中秋節	Zhōngqiūjié	Mid-Autumn Festival

SAMPLE SENTENCES

春节很热闹. Chūnjié hěn rènào. Spring Festival is really exciting.	恭喜发财! Gōngxǐfācái! Wishing you riches! (New Year's greeting)
祝大家新年快乐! Zhù dàjiā Xīnnián kuàilè! Wish everyone a happy New Year!	国庆节的时候广场上人乌泱乌泱的。 Guóqìngjié de shíhou guǎngchǎng shàng rén wū yāng wū yāng de. During the national holidays, there were a lot of people in the square.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is 5 Important Holidays in China

春节 (Chūnjié): Spring Festival / Chinese New Year

The most important holiday for Chinese people, in the past and right up to today, is the Spring Festival, also known as Chinese New Year. If a festival's importance could be measured by the decibels of noise it produces, the Spring Festival would be a shoe-in as winner. The new

year is welcomed in with food, family gatherings, and lots and lots of fireworks...unceasing fireworks for days on end, in fact.

Chinese New Year falls on different dates each year, usually a date between January 21 and February 20. In the Chinese calendar, the winter solstice occurs in the eleventh month; this means that Chinese New Year always falls on the second new moon after the midnight following winter solstice.

The origins of Chinese New Year go too far back to be certain what gave rise to the many associated traditions. There are numerous legends that offer explanations; many center around a mythical beast that would terrorize villagers, in addition to devouring crops and livestock. Red lanterns, red scrolls and firecrackers were all said to aid in scaring him away.

Chinese New Year is observed as a public holiday in a number of countries where a sizable Chinese population resides. Generally in China people will get a three to five day holiday off work to celebrate.

Chinese New Year in the past, as well as today, centered around family. Nowadays, families will travel across the country, and even from abroad, to reunite and spend this holiday together.

Traditions and Rituals

The Eve of the New Year is the most strictly observed part of the holiday. It starts out with a reunion dinner, where members of the family, from near and far away, get together for the celebration. The venue will usually be in or near the home of the most senior member of the family. The New Year's Eve dinner is very sumptuous and traditionally includes chicken and fish. Each day of the festival has traditional foods, but these will vary from region to region and family to family. Several of the dishes eaten on these days have names that are homophones for words with positive or lucky connotations. Ancestors are honored and in some homes offerings of food and incense are made to the gods.

At the stroke of midnight, the celebrating really begins. The sky is filled with fireworks and the streets are filled with people wishing each other a happy new year.

The next morning, gifts are exchanged among family members and friends. Red envelopes containing money will be given to the younger members of the family by the more senior members of the family. During the remaining days of the celebration, time is spent visiting friends and wishing them luck in the new year. New Years Eve and the first three days of the new year are officially observed as a holiday. During this time the majority of businesses shut

down for the celebrating.

At Chinese New Year you will hear greetings of 恭喜发财 (*gōng xǐ fā cái*), a phrase which offers congratulations and wishes of prosperity to the recipient. Another common greeting is simply '新年快乐' (*xīn nián kuài lè*), which means 'Happy New Year".

Though there is no traditional garb worn for Chinese New Year, new clothes are usually worn to signify a new year. The color red is liberally used in all decorations.

中秋节 (*Zhōngqiūjié*): Mid-Autumn Festival / Moon Festival

This festival is a popular harvest festival celebrated by Chinese people. It dates back over 3,000 years, and originates from Moon worship in the Shang Dynasty.

The Mid-Autumn Festival is held on the fifteenth day of the eighth month in the Chinese calendar, which is usually around mid or late September. It is a date that parallels the autumn and spring Equinoxes of the solar calendar, when the moon is supposedly at its fullest and roundest.

The roots of the holiday lie in the story of the 'woman on the moon'. The legend, which has many versions today, tells the story of the fateful night when Chang'e was lifted up to the moon. The story is a favorite subject of Chinese poets.

Farmers celebrate the end of the summer harvesting season on this date. Traditionally, on this day, Chinese family members and friends will gather to admire the bright mid-autumn harvest moon, and eat moon cakes and pomeloes together.

Nowadays this holiday is celebrated with visits to friends and families, and gift-giving of the traditional food of the holiday, mooncakes. Most mooncakes consist of a thin tender pastry enveloping a sweet, dense filling. The mooncake may contain one or more whole salted egg yolks in its center to symbolize the full moon. Mooncakes are considered a delicacy; production is labor-intensive and few people make them at home. The price of a mooncake can range from $10 to $50 although cheaper and more expensive mooncakes can also be found. Traditional mooncakes have an imprint on top often consisting of the Chinese characters for "longevity" or "harmony" as well as the name of the bakery and/or the filling in the moon cake.

清明 (Qīngmíng) Festival: Tomb-Sweeping Day

Another important day in China is Qingming Festival, also known as 'Tomb Sweeping Day.'

A traditional Chinese festival on the 104th day after the winter solstice, usually occurring around April 5.

For the Chinese, it is a day to remember and honor one's ancestors at their grave sites. Young and old pray before the ancestors, clean up the tombs and offer food, tea, or wine to the ancestors. The rites are very important to most Chinese and especially farmers. Some people carry willow branches with them on Qingming, or put willow branches on their gates and/or front doors. They think that willow branches help ward off the evil ghosts that wander on Qingming.

国庆节 (Guóqìngjié): National Day

Another important day in China is National Day. October 1 is National Day in China.

The People's Republic of China was founded on October 1, 1949 with a ceremony at Tiananmen Square. The Central People's Government passed the Resolution on the National Day of the People's Republic of China on December 2, 1949 and declared October 1 as National Day.

National Day is celebrated throughout mainland China, Hong Kong, and Macau with a variety of government-organized festivities, including fireworks and concerts. Public places like Tiananmen Square are decorated in a festive theme. Portraits of revered leaders, such as Sun Yat-Sen, are publicly displayed, and the Chinese flag is waved everywhere from pedestrians on the streets to outside taxi windows.

端午节 (Duānwǔjié): Dragon Boat Festival

The Duanwu Festival occurs on the fifth day of the fifth month of the Chinese calendar. It generally falls sometime in June.

The Duanwu Festival is believed to have originated in ancient China. There are a number folk traditions, beliefs and explanatory myths connected to the observance. The best-known traditional story holds that the festival commemorates the death of poet Qu Yuan (c. 340 B.C. - 278 B.C.) from the Warring States Period of the Zhou Dynasty.

Three of the most widespread activities for the Duanwu Festival are eating 粽子 (*zòngzi*), a glutinous rice ball wrapped in reed or bamboo leaves, drinking traditional spirits, and racing dragon boats.

The festival has long been a cultural holiday in China. However, the Chinese government

long excluded traditional holidays such as the Dragon Boat Festival from its list of public holidays. In 2008, the Dragon Boat Festival was celebrated in mainland China as an official public holiday for the first time.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #10 Pop Culture

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

10

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Pop Culture in China

Music

Chinese pop music has historically been dominated by artists from Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore, and American-born Chinese singers. Chinese have a thing for ballads, though the hiphop scene and punk scene have been growing in popularity in recent times as well.
One popular pop singer in recent years is Jay Chou, a Taiwanese hiphop star. Famed for his poorly enunciated rap, Jay Chou composes his own music and has sold millions of albums. Jay Chou has been spokesperson for pepsi, Panasonic and more. He led a Macdonalds ad campaign with the theme song from the commerical even featuring on his album. Whereas in the West, endorsements are viewed as an artist 'selling out', in Asia, acquiring endorsement contracts with major brands are a testament to one's star-status.

Alexander Lee-Hom Wang is another popular singer. His style mixes traditional Chinese music elements with pop elements, creating a unique mix of Western and Chinese styles

Movies

The Chinese are going to the movies in numbers never seen before. Box office revenues are on the rise, and five of the top ten films shown in 2006 were Chinese, not from Hollywood. Only twenty foreign movies are allowed in Chinese theaters per year.

After 1949 and until recent times, the cinema of mainland China operated under restrictions imposed by the Communist Party. Some films with political overtones are still censored or banned in China.
A number of Chinese films have enjoyed box office success abroad. Films such as Farewell My Concubine, 2046, Hero, The Road Home and House of Flying Daggers have been critically acclaimed around the world.

Television

The popularity of American television programs is having a profound effect on China's entertainment industry. While actual American shows have yet to hit Chinese airwaves (the government considers them to violent or sexual for the Chinese audience), illegal internet download sites and file-sharing programs have created a sizable fan base for American

programs in China. Pirated DVDs have also played a critical role in establishing audiences.

Television stations have also chosen to adapt some of the U.S.'s most iconic series and make Chinese versions. For example, one series called 'Wanting to Fall in Love,' is modeled after 'Sex and the City'. Another wildly popular TV show was the mainland Chinese version of American Idol. It was one of the most popular entertainment shows in the country from 2004 to 2006. Despite 'Super Girl's' major popularity and success, the show was heavily criticised by some members of the government. It was declared 'poison for the youth', and later cancelled.

However, some of the most popular shows on Chinese television are not mere copies of American-style programming. Period dramas and stories that relate specifically to Chinese history, politics and lifestyle garner huge audiences.

Foreign Stars

China has an awkward love-hate relationship with all things foreign. On the one hand, the Chinese are fascinated by foreigners. English signs on shops and restaurants are fashionable and prestigious. American-style housing suburbs are all the rage, and Western sports stars and Hollywood celebrities have massive fan followings in China.
At the same time, the Chinese can instantly turn hostile to foreigners at any perceived slight. Huge national scandals have surfaced when a foreigner is perceived to have disrespected China or its people, even in relatively small matters.

Sports

Basketball was introduced to China in the late 1800s at the YMCA, and has grown in popularity ever since. Despite Chinese athletic prowess in table tennis, its enthusiasm for soccer, and its strengths in many other sports, basketball is arguably becoming a "national sport" in China. NBA marketing efforts, Olympic basketball and the Chinese government's promotion have contributed to the game's growth in popularity in China. But the true secret weapon is Yao Ming. Yao Ming is the key factor in building fan support; the masses love him.
Yao Ming - ever since Yao Ming's appearance on the NBA basketball scene, Chinese have taken an ever increasing interest in basketball. Many Chinese view Yao Ming as a national hero. Basketball has risen in popularity in the last few years, and more and more talented players are coming out of China. The Chinese Basketball league is growing and gaining popularity now, country wide.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #11
Top 5 Tools for Learning Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

11

COPYRIGHT © 2015 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is to give some suggestions for the Top 5 Useful Tools for Learning Chinese

---

Some great tools to aid you in your Chinese studies are...

1. A Chinese Dictionary

Pleco for Palm Pilot / Wenlin for computer

Supplementary dictionary: ABC Dictionary by John DeFrancis; a phonetic pinyin dictionary with great definitions and easy lookup system

2. Adsotrans

A great online super-dictionary, found at www.adsotrans.com. Just paste in any Chinese text and let Adso analyze it. Mouse over the results to see what the words mean in English, and how to pronounce them. You can also use Adso to translate text directly from Chinese to English and to write pinyin with tones. With lots of definitions missing from other dictionaries, Adso can also give you a basic understand of Chinese grammar. Adso will get you in the rhythm of reading Chinese better than anything else.

www.adsotrans.com

3. Chinese Pera-kun

Enables you to read Chinese websites by providing mouseover translation of text. Download the Firefox plug-in at:

https://addons.mozilla.org/en-US/firefox/addon/3349

4. Flashcards

Try our flashcards on the site, chineseclass101.com. Simply add words from any of our lessons to your word bank, then go to the flashcards tab and they will be automatically populated for you.

5. Google's Character Writing Software

Use *pinyin* to input Chinese characters. Google's intuitive software will predict what words you want to use, and will allow you to string along sentences. It's a great help for the Chinese learner who wants to communicate in writing in Chinese. It can be downloaded from:

http://www.google.com/ime/pinyin/

6. Pinyin Chart

Come to http://www.chineseclass101.com/learningcenter/reference/pinyin_chart and use our *pinyin* chart with audio for each of the sounds of Chinese to familiarize yourself with the pronunciation of *pinyin* as well as to perfect you own pronunciation.

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #12
Top 5 Mistakes to Avoid

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Grammar

12

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我的书在哪儿?
2. 她是谁?
3. 你在吃什么?
4. 我去了。
5. 我去过。
6. 我不吃。
7. 我没吃。
8. 我不唱。
9. 我没唱。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我的書在哪兒?
2. 她是誰?
3. 你在吃什麼?
4. 我去了。
5. 我去過。

CONT'D OVER

6. 我不吃。

7. 我沒吃。

8. 我不唱。

9. 我沒唱。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ de shū zài nǎr?

2. Tā shì shéi?

3. Nǐ zài chī shénme?

4. Wǒ qù le.

5. Wǒ qù guo.

6. Wǒ bù chī.

7. Wǒ méi chī.

8. Wǒ bù chàng.

9. Wǒ méi chàng.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Where is my book?
2. Who is she?
3. What are you eating?
4. I went.
5. I have been before.
6. I don't eat.
7. I didn't eat.
8. I don't sing.
9. I didn't sing.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
我	我	wǒ	I, me
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
没	沒	méi	(negative prefix)
去	去	qù	to go
什么	什麼	shénme	what
吃	吃	chī	to eat
谁	誰	shéi	who
是	是	shì	to be

她	她	tā	she, her
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
在	在	zài	at
书	書	shū	book
唱	唱	chàng	to sing

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.
世界上没有完美的人。 shìjiè shàng méiyǒu wánměi de rén. In the entire world, nobody is perfect.	这里的风景很普通。 Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng hěn pǔtōng. The scenery here is pretty common.
我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	你在吃什么? Nǐ zài chī shénme? What are you eating?
要吃什么? Yào chī shénme? What do you want to eat?	她是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is she?
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēgē. He is my older brother.	她是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is she?
您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?	他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.

他在一家小公司做销售。 Tā zài yī jiā xiǎo gōngsī zuò xiāoshòu. He does sales for a small company.	我沒唱. Wǒ méi chàng. I didn't sing.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Avoiding Common Errors That Learners of Chinese Make

---

Common Error #1:

Incorrrect word order when forming questions: English speakers tend to use English word order when forming questions with question words like what, where, who, etc. In English, the question word comes at the beginning of the sentence. Chinese is different. The question word comes at the end of the sentence.

Correct:
我的书在哪儿？
Wǒ de shū zài nǎr?
"Where is my book?" (literally: "My book at where?")

Incorrect:
在哪儿我的书？
Zài nǎr wǒ de shū?
"Where is my book?" (literally: "At where my book?")

More examples:

1. **她是谁？**
   Tā shì shéi ?
   "Who is she?" (literally: She is who?)

2. **你在吃什么？**
   Nǐ zài chī shénme?
   "What are you eating?" (literally: You eating what?)

Common Error #2:

Making verbs past tense: getting the particles 了 and 过 mixed up. Put in a simple way, 了 is used for a completed action. 过 is used to indicate previous experience.

我去了.
Wǒ qù le.
"I went."

我去过.
Wǒ qù guo.
"I have been before."

Common Error #3:

Negating verbs: getting the 不 and the 没 mixed up. Put in a simple way, the 不 is used to negate action verbs in present, future, or when speaking about habitual actions. 没 is used when the action either did not happen (so past tense), or isn't complete yet.

我不吃.
Wǒ bù chī .
"I don't eat."

我没吃
Wǒ méi chī
"I didn't eat."

More examples:

1. 我不唱.
   Wǒ bù chàng.
   "I don't sing."

2. 我没唱.
   Wǒ méi chàng.
   "I didn't sing."

Common Error #4:

In an attempt to be polite, using too many words. A lot of Chinese learners, in an attempt to

translate what is polite in their own language end up confusing their Chinese listener with too many words. The Chinese are very direct in speech, and it is not considered rude to just state something plainly. There is not a lot of need for extra 'pleases' and flowery sort of softening words. Listen to how a Chinese person who is learning English tends to speak English, and aim to follow that pattern in Chinese. Then you will sound more 'Chinese'.

Common Error #5:

Being so afraid about having a standard accent or the correct tones that you are too afraid to speak. The best remedy for a bad accent or bad tones is more practice. So don't be afraid, just keep talking. You will improve!

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #13
Phrases You Won't Learn in Class

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

13

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 哎哟
2. 神经病
3. 很棒
4. 便宜一点儿，可以吗?
5. 受不了

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 哎喲
2. 神經病
3. 很棒
4. 便宜一點兒，可以嗎?
5. 受不了

PINYIN

1. āiyōu
2. shénjīngbìng

CONT'D OVER

3. hěn bàng

4. Piányi yīdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma?

5. shòu bù liǎo

ENGLISH

1. yikes

2. mental illness

3. awesome

4. Can you make it a little cheaper?

5. to be unable to bear

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
哎哟	哎喲	āiyōu	yikes
神经病	神經病	shénjīngbìng	mental illness
棒	棒	bàng	awesome
便宜	便宜	piányi	inexpensive; cheap
一点儿	一點兒	yīdiǎnr	a little
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
受不了	受不了	shòu bù liǎo	to be unable to bear

吗	嗎	ma	question particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

哎哟，你怎么这么慢！ Aiyōu, nǐ zěnme zhème màn! Jeesh! How can you be so slow?	干嘛！神经病！ Gàn má! shénjīngbìng! What are (you) doing! (You're) crazy!
你的中文很棒！ Nǐ de Zhōngwén hěn bàng! Your Chinese is really awesome!	便宜一点儿，可以吗？ Piányi yìdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma? Can (you) make it a little cheaper?
他只会说一点儿。 Tā zhǐ huì shuō yīdiǎnr. He can only speak a little.	你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.
太冷了，我受不了. Tài lěng le, wǒ shòu bù liǎo. It's too cold; I can't take it.	你最近好吗？ Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo ma? How have you been recently?

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top 5 Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

---

Here are some very common Chinese expressions that you might not learn from a Chinese teacher.

哎哟
āiyōu
"yikes"

神经病

shénjīngbìng
"mental Illness"

很棒!
hěn bàng!
"Awesome!"

便宜一点儿，可以吗？
piányi yīdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma?
"Can you make it a little cheaper?"

受不了
shòu bù liǎo
"to be unable to bear"

These are high frequency Chinese phrases and expressions that you can use all the time.

哎哟 (*āiyōu*) is used as an interjection. Depending on the circumstance and tone of voice, 哎哟 (āiyōu) can mean express anything from irritation, to surprise, to disapproval. It is generally used for matters that have a more negative slant, though depending on the context and tone of voice, it can also be an expression of pleasure.

神经病 (*shénjīngbìng*) literally means "mental Illness". When a person is displeased with another's actions or words, 神经病 (shénjīngbìng) is a cutting retort; similar to the English 'you're crazy!' It is usually uttered on its own and directed at someone as an insult.

很棒! (*hěn bàng*!) means 'awesome' or 'great'. It can be used to describe people, places, things, etc. Anything that one feels is great will often give occasion to let out a 很棒! (hěn bàng!).

便宜一点儿，可以吗？ (*Piányi yīdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma*?) means "Can you make it a little cheaper?" This phrase is a must for any shopper. Often in China just uttering this simple phrase will give you an immediate discount of at least 10 percent off the quoted price.

受不了 (*shòu bù liǎo*) can be used as a complaint when you just can't take it anymore. It literally means "to be unable to bear", and can be used to vent one's frustration with a person or situation. It can also be used when one cannot physically bear something as well; you could use it to tell a masseuse that they are using too much force and you can't take it.

Examples:

1. 哎哟，你怎么这么慢！
   āiyōu, nǐ zěnme zhème màn!
   "Jeesh! How can you be so slow?"

2. 神经病！
   shénjīngbìng!
   "(You're) crazy!"

3. 你的中文很棒！
   Nǐ de Zhōngwén hěn bàng!
   "Your Chinese is awesome!"

4. 便宜一点儿，可以吗？
   Piányi yīdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma?
   "Can (you) make it a little cheaper?"

5. 太冷了，我受不了。
   Tài lěng le, wǒ shòu bù liǎo.
   "It's too cold, I can't stand it."

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #14
Top 5 Classroom Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar

14

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 请再说一次。
2. .....中文怎么说?
3. 请问...
4. 我听不懂.
5. 你可以说得慢一点儿吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 再說一次。
2. .....中文怎麼說?
3. 請問...
4. 我聽不懂.
5. 你可以說得慢一點兒嗎?

PINYIN

1. Qǐng zài shuō yī cì.
2. Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ?

CONT'D OVER

3. Qǐng wèn ...

4. Wǒ tīngbùdǒng.

5. Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎnr ma ?

ENGLISH

1. Please repeat that.

2. How do you say ... in Chinese?

3. May I ask...

4. I don't understand.

5. Can you speak a little slower?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
请	請	qǐng	please
慢	慢	màn	slowly, slow
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
你	你	nǐ	you
听不懂	聽不懂	tīngbùdǒng	to not understand
请问	請問	qǐng wèn	may I ask
怎么	怎麼	zěnme	how

中文	中文	Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
一次	一次	yī cì	one time
说	說	shuō	to speak
再	再	zài	again
一点儿	一點兒	yīdiǎnr	a little

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请再说一次。 Qǐng zài shuō yī cì. Please repeat that.	你可以说得慢一点吗? Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎn ma? Can you speak a little slower?
你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
那句话我听不懂。 Nà jù huà wǒ tīngbùdǒng. I don't understand that sentence.	请问，你是不是王先生? Qǐngwèn nǐ shìbúshì Wáng Xiānshēng? May I ask, are you Mr. Wang?
请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guì xìng? May I ask your name?	怎么会这样? Zěnme huì zhèyàng? How is that?
我不学中文。 Wǒ bù xué Zhōngwén. I don't study Chinese.	请再说一次。 Qǐng zài shuō yī cì. Please say it again.
南方人的普通话不太标准。 Nánfāng rén de pǔtōnghuà bù tài biāozhǔn. The mandarin of Southerners is not terribly standard.	我以前是法语翻译。 Wǒ yǐqián shì fǎyǔ fānyì. I was a French translator before.

便宜一点儿，可以吗? Piányi yìdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma? Can (you) make it a little cheaper?	你可以说得慢一点吗? Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎn ma? Can you speak a little slower?

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is to learn some useful phrases for the classroom, in Chinese.

Here are the phrases from the lesson:

请再说一次。
(Qǐng zài shuō yī cì.)
"Please repeat that."
.....中文怎么说?
(Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ?)
"How do you say ..... in Chinese?"
请问...
(Qǐng wèn...)
"May I ask..."
我听不懂.
(Wǒ tīngbùdǒng.)
"I don't understand."
你可以说得慢一点吗?
(Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yīdiǎn ma?)
"Can you speak a little slower?"

LESSON NOTES

All About S1 #15 Our Pet Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

15

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 麻烦你了。
2. 没事。
3. 还可以
4. 怎么这么。。。
5. 真的吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 麻煩你了。
2. 沒事
3. 還可以
4. 怎麼這麼。。。
5. 真的嗎?

PINYIN

1. Máfan nǐ le.
2. méi shì

CONT'D OVER

3. hái kěyǐ

4. zěnme zhème...

5. Zhēn de ma?

ENGLISH

1. I've troubled you.

2. it's nothing

3. passable, not bad

4. how can (it) be so...

5. Really?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
麻烦	麻煩	máfan	trouble
你	你	nǐ	you
没事	沒事	méi shì	it's nothing
还可以	還可以	hái kěyǐ	not bad, passable
怎么	怎麼	zěnme	how
这么	這麼	zhème	so, such
真的	真的	zhēn de	really

凶	凶	xiōng	fierce
胖	胖	pàng	fat

SAMPLE SENTENCES

麻烦你了。 Máfan nǐ le. I've troubled you.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
没事儿，没事儿。 méi shìr, méi shìr. It's nothing, it's nothing.	今天的天气还可以。 Jīntiān de tiānqì hái kěyǐ. Today's weather isn't bad.
中文怎么说? Zhōngwén zěnme shuō? How do you say it in Chinese?	别这么吝啬。 Bié zhè me lìn sè. Don't be so mean.
你真的喜欢她吗? Nǐ zhēn de xǐhuan tā ma? You really like her?	怎么这么凶! Zěnme zhème xiōng! How can you be so mad?
我很怕胖! Wǒ hěn pà pàng! I'm really afraid of getting fat.	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is ChineseClass101's Favorite Pet Phrases in Chinese

---

Pet Phrase #1:

麻烦你了。
Máfan nǐ le.
"I've troubled you."

Often used when asking a favor of someone, following a request with this phrase is a way to show appreciation to the person. It is a way to add politeness when making a request.

Pet Phrase #2:

没事。
Méi shì
"It's nothing."

You will hear this phrase all day long in China. It's a generic catch-all to mean 'no problem', 'don't worry about it', 'it doesn't matter', etc.

Pet Phrase #3:

还可以。
hái kěyǐ
"passable; not bad"

Often used in response to a query about how things are going. It can also be used to describe a movie, a person, really any situation that is neither good nor bad.

Pet Phrase #4:

怎么这么。。。
Zenme zheme…
"How can (it) be so…"

Often used as an exclamation. As in:

1. 怎么这么凶！
   Zěnme zhème xiōng!
   "What's (he) so mad about?"

2. 怎么这么胖！
   Zěnme zhème pàng !
   "How can (he) be so fat?"

Pet Phrase #5:

真的吗？

Zhēn de ma? **“Really?”**

Just like the English ‘Really?’, this phrase is used to express surprise or disbelief. It is a very good way to acknowledge something interesting your conversation partner has said.

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation S1 #1
What Makes a Chinese Word

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

1

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Make-Up of a Chinese Word

There are only approximately four hundred unique sounds in the Chinese language. These unique sounds have been categorized into a Romanized phonetic system to aid Chinese learners in learning the pronunciation of the Chinese characters. Further, each character has its own tone and the tone is indicated in the pinyin phonetic system by a symbol placed over the Romanized word.

Individual Chinese words are made up of an initial sound and a final sound. You can refer to them on the website's pinyin chart, which has clickable audio to help you hear the different combinations of sounds in the Chinese language. Each Chinese character is one syllable. These characters, or syllables, can also be combined in groups of two or more to make compound words.

Pinyin Sounds Mentioned in the Lesson

The following is a list of the Romanized pinyin pronunciations we go over in this lesson:

1. [*hen*]
2. [*bang*]
3. [*shang*]
4. [*deng*]
5. [*bǐ*]
6. [*pie*]
7. [*wang*]
8. [*quan*]
9. [*yuan*]

Some comparisons of pinyin sounds:

1. [*mo*] / [*mou*]
2. [*se*] / [*sī*]
3. [*ze*] / [*zī*]
4. [*ce*] / [*cī*]
5. [*re*] / [*rī*]
6. [*she*] / [*shī*]
7. [*zhe*] / [*zhī*]
8. [*che*] / [*chī*]
9. [*lu*] / [*lü*]
10. [*nu*] / [*nü*]

The four tones are indicated by the following symbols in pinyin:

1. 1st tone: [*mā*]
2. 2nd tone: [*má*]
3. 3rd tone: [*mǎ*]
4. 4th tone: [*mà*]

Neutral tone is written with no tone mark, [*ma*].

Pronunciation Tip

Coming soon! To get a grasp on all the different sound combinations in the Chinese language, make sure to go to the Pinyin Chart at ChineseClass101.com. There you will find a listing of all the possible sounds in Mandarin Chinese with audio files you can listen to and

repeat after, to help you to perfect your pronunciation.

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation S1 #2
The Four Chinese Tones

CONTENTS

2 Grammar
3 Cultural Insight

2

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Pronunciation of the Four Tones of Chinese

---

Overview of the Chinese Tones and their Pronunciation

1st Tone

In pinyin, the 1st tone is indicated by a straight line above the vowel, i.e.,
[*mā*]
The 1st tone is pronounced high and steady. The pitch should be kept to the highest range that is comfortable for you.

2nd Tone

In pinyin, the 2nd tone is indicated by an angled slash above the vowel, i.e.,

[*má*]

The 2nd tone has a rising intonation. It is similar to the sound we make in English to indicate that we are asking a question. It starts at the mid-range of your pitch and rises from there. The tone is similar to that of an English speaker uses when he/she questioningly says, "Huh?"

3rd Tone

In pinyin, the 3rd tone is indicated by a small "-v" shape above the vowel, i.e.,

[*mǎ*]

The 3rd tone starts around mid-range as well, however, it dips down and at its lowest point you can feel the sound in the base of your throat before it slightly rises back up to a higher pitch.

4th Tone

In pinyin, the 4th tone is indicated by a backslash over the vowel, i.e.,

[*mà*]

In pinyin, the 4th tone is a sharp, falling tone. It falls quickly and can be likened to a sharp, slightly "angry" sounding tone.

Neutral Tone

The neutral tone has no mark over it in pinyin. It is pronounced flat and without emphasis.

Pronunciation Tip

There is no better way to get the hang of the tones in Chinese than by listening and practicing them yourself. If you have access to a native speaker of Chinese, it is great practice to have them say words and have you repeat after them with the native speaker correcting you where necessary. Gradually the tune of the tones will stick in your head.

You can also use the materials at ChineseClass101.com to listen to native speakers' pronunciation in the MP3 recordings of the vocabulary, and repeat, repeat, repeat. Also, the voice recorder on the website allows you to hear and compare your pronunciation with a the native speakers'.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Just Keep Speaking!

Don't worry if you are having trouble with the tones at first. There are a lot of tone variations even amongst different regions in China, and most often if you have some context, even if your tones are not perfect, you can be understood. Just keep speaking and they will improve naturally over time.

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation S1 #3
Tone Change Rules

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar

3

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
一般	一般	yībān	average
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
要	要	yào	to want
你	你	nǐ	you
好	好	hǎo	good
一	一	yī	one
十一	十一	shíyī	11
人	人	rén	person
个	個	ge	universal measure word
碗	碗	wǎn	bowl
一共	一共	yīgòng	all together
一定	一定	yīdìng	definitely, certainly
很	很	hěn	very

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他的表演很一般。 Tā de biǎoyǎn hěn yībān. His performance was average.	我不认识他。 Wǒ bù rènshi tā. I don't know him.
他要一张纸。 Tā yào yī zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
十一块钱怎么样? Shì yī kuài qián zěnmeyàng? How about 11 RMB?	中国人很多。 Zhōngguó rén hěnduō. There are many Chinese people.
这个菜太辣了。 This dish is too spicy.	这个多少钱? Zhège duōshǎo qián? How much is this?
尝尝这个。 Chángchang zhège. Have a taste of this.	他是一个间谍。 Tā shì yí ge jiàndié. He is a spy.
我要一碗米饭。 Wǒ yào yī wǎn mǐfàn. I want one bowl of rice.	这些东西一共十块钱。 Zhèxiē dōngxi yīgòng shí kuài qián. All together these things cost 10 RMB.
我一定会去。 Wǒ yīdìng huì qù. I will definitely go.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is an Overview of the Tone Change Rules in Spoken Chinese

---

Tone Change Rules

The Third Tone Rule

When two or more third tone characters occur in a row, the last of these remains a third tone while the one(s) before it shift to the second tone.

For Example:

1. *hěn hǎo* is pronounced [hén hǎo]
2. *nǐ hěn hǎo* is pronounced [ní hén hǎo]

The Tone Changes for 不 (*bù*)

不 (*bù*) means "not" or "no," and is fourth tone. However, when it comes before another fourth tone character, it shifts to the second tone.

For Example:

1. *bù yào* is pronounced [bú yào]

The Tone Changes for 一 (*yī*)

The word for the number 1 in Chinese, *yī*, is pronounced as first tone when used as a numeral; whether on its own as in 一, 二, 三 (*yī, èr, sǎn*), or in combination with another number.

For Example:

1. 十一 (*shíyī*)

一 (*yi*), normally first tone, becomes fourth tone when preceding a word that is first, second, or third tone, or neutral tone.

For Example:

1. *yī ge rén* is pronounced [yì ge rén]

Anything but a fourth tone word after an 一 (*yī*) makes the *yī* change to become fourth tone.

For Example:

1. *yī wǎn* is pronounced [yì wǎn]

If the word after the *yī* is fourth tone, the *yī* will become second tone.

For Example:

1. *yīgòng* is pronounced [yígòng]

Pronunciation Tip

The tone changes are reflected in the oral pronunciation of the tones only. The written pinyin form still reflects the original tone of the character, so don't get confused!

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation S1 #4
Tones in Combination

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar

4

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
再见	再見	zàijiàn	goodbye
阴暗	陰暗	yīn'àn	dim, dark
搭配	搭配	dāpèi	to match, to pair up
冰水	冰水	bīngshuǐ	ice water
美国	美國	Měiguó	United States of America
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
十四	十四	shísì	fourteen
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know
书店	書店	shūdiàn	bookstore
加油	加油	jiāyóu	go for it, keep it up
人民	人民	rénmín	people
好玩	好玩	hǎowán	fun
弟弟	弟弟	dìdi	younger brother
妈妈	媽媽	māma	mother
没有	沒有	méiyǒu	to not have

SAMPLE SENTENCES

再见，我会想你。 Zàijiàn, wǒ huì xiǎng nǐ. Goodbye, I'll miss you.	外面有一点儿阴暗。 Wàimian yǒu yī diǎnr yīn'àn. It's a little dark out there.

这些衣服很大佩。 Zhèxiē yīfu hěn dàpèi. These clothes go together well.	我喜欢喝冰水。 Wǒ xǐhuan hē bīngshuǐ. I like to drink ice water.
我来自美国。 Wǒ láizì Měiguó. I come from America.	你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.
我女儿十四岁。 Wǒ nǚér shísì suì. My daughter is fourteen years old.	你知道他是谁吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?
那家书店有很多书。 Nā jiā shūdiàn yǒu hěn duō shū. That bookstore has a lot of books.	加油！加油！别放弃！ Jiāyóu! Jiāyóu! Bié fàngqì! Go for it! Keep it up! Don't give up!
我要去人民广场。 Wǒ yào qù Rénmín Guǎngchǎng. I want to go to People's Square.	我们去那里很好玩。 Wǒmen qù nàli hěn hǎowán. Going there was really fun.
你弟弟好可爱哦! Nǐ dìdi hǎo kě'ài o! Your little brother is so cute!	做妈妈很累。 Zuò māma hěn lèi. Being a mom is really tiring.
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián. I don't have money.	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is to Understand How Tones Sound Relative to the Other Tones They are Combined With 加油

加油

jiāyóu
"Go for it."

Tones in Combination

In this lesson, we heard how the following tones sounded when combined together in the following words.

For Example:

1. 加油
   jiāyóu
   "go for it"

2. 书店
   shūdiàn "bookstore"

3. 搭配
   dāpèi
   "to match, to pair up"

4. 冰水
   bīngshuǐ
   "cold water"

5. 阴暗
   yīn'àn
   "dim, dark"

6. 知道
   zhīdào
   "to know"

7. 十四
   shí sì "fourteen"

8. 可以
   kěyǐ "can"

9. 没有
   méiyǒu
   "to not have"

10. 中文
    Zhōngwén
    "Chinese (language)"

11. 人民
    rénmín
    "the people"

12. 美国
    Měiguó "America"

13. 好玩
    hǎowán "fun"

14. 弟弟
    dìdi
    "younger brother"

15. 妈妈
    māma "Mom"

16. 再见
    zàijiàn "goodbye"

Pronunciation Tip

When wrapping your mind around Chinese words and their tones, try to hear the word as a whole, rather than attempting to pronounce each syllable in its separate tone. If you listen to an entire word and try to mimic the overall sound of the combined word, the tones will start to

come a lot easier. Over-exaggerating each tone, syllable by syllable, makes it hard to speak naturally.

LESSON NOTES

Pronunciation S1 #5 Challenging Sounds in Pinyin

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

5

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is to Master the Challenging Sounds of *Pinyin*

Mouth position commentary on the more difficult sounds to pronounce in Chinese:

Tricky Consonant Sounds

---

1. "-z" - the difference of the *pinyin* "-z" with the English "-z" is that the Chinese sound is made with your tongue touching the back of your upper teeth. This results in a more "-dz" sound.

2. "-c" – sometimes mixed up with the "-z" sound, the "-c" is aspirated whereas the "-z" is not. Aspirated means that you let air out when producing this sound.

3. "-zh" – to make this sound the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge. It has a similar sound to the English "-j," but the retroflexive nature makes it much thicker.

4. "-ch" – this is similar to the English "-ch," as in "chocolate," however, the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge, as it is in the "-zh."

5. "-sh" - this is similar to the English "-sh," however, the tip of the tongue is raised against the back of the gum ridge as it is in the "-zh" and "-ch."

6. "-x" - to make this sound, raise your tongue up and let the air squeeze out.

7. "-q" – it is in the range of the English "-ch" but different in that it is also produced in the same way as the "-x." You raise your tongue and let the air squeeze out.

8. "-r" – nothing like the English "-r;" here we have the curled tongue touching the gum ridge, with a "-z" sound slightly mixed in.

Tricky Vowel

Sound

The "-ü" sound is quite a nasal sound. It is made by pronouncing an "-i," then rounding the mouth.

Pronunciation Tip

You can listen to all the sounds of Chinese and see their corresponding *pinyin* Romanization at www.chineseclass101.com. There is a *pinyin* chart with clickable MP3 recordings of each of the sounds to aid you in perfecting the pronunciations.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #1 Where Did You Learn to Speak Chinese Like That?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
5 Grammar

1

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. TIM: 喂?
2. MIKE: 你好！我是麦克。
3. TIM: 你好！
4. MIKE: 我明天去中国。
5. TIM: 是吗？旅途愉快！
6. MIKE: 谢谢，再见！
7. TIM: 再见！

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. TIM: 喂?
2. MIKE: 你好！我是麥克。
3. TIM: 你好！
4. MIKE: 我明天去中國。
5. TIM: 是嗎？旅途愉快！
6. MIKE: 謝謝，再見！
7. TIM: 再見！

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. TIM: Wéi?

2. MIKE: Nǐhǎo! Wǒ shì Màikè.

3. TIM: Nǐhǎo!

4. MIKE: Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó.

5. TIM: Shì ma？Lǚtú yúkuài!

6. MIKE: Xièxie, zàijiàn!

7. TIM: Zàijiàn!

ENGLISH

1. TIM: Hello?

2. MIKE: Hi! This is Mike.

3. TIM: Hi!

4. MIKE: I'm going to China tomorrow.

5. TIM: Oh yeah? Have a great trip!

6. MIKE: Thanks, goodbye.

7. TIM: Bye!

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
喂	喂	wéi	hello (answering telephone)
再见	再見	zài jiàn	see you again
谢谢	謝謝	xièxie	thank you
旅途愉快	旅途愉快	lǚtú yúkuài	have a nice trip
中国	中國	Zhōngguó	China
去	去	qù	to go
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
是	是	shì	to be
我	我	wǒ	I, me
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello
每天	每天	měitiān	every day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

喂! 你找谁? Wéi! Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Hello! Who are you looking for?	谢谢，再见! Xièxie, zàijiàn! Thanks, bye!
谢谢你的帮助. Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù. Thanks for your help.	你要去中国吗? 旅途愉快! Nǐ yào qù Zhōngguó ma？ Lǚtú yúkuài! You're going to China? Have a great trip!
我明天去中国。 Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó. I'm going to China tomorrow.	我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qùle dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.

我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
你好，我想找安娜。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo Ānnà. Hello, can I speak to Anna?	你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.
我每天喝茶。 Wǒ měitiān hē chá. I drink tea every day.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Tim: 喂？*Wéi?* ("Hello?")
Mike: 你好！我是麦克。*Nǐhǎo! Wǒ shì Màikè.* ("Hello! This is Mike.")

The most common greeting in Chinese is 你好 (*Nǐhǎo*), however, when on the telephone (or any other online communication tool) generally the opening greeting upon answering the call is 喂 (*Wéi*). 喂 is, according to the dictionary, to be pronounced in 4th tone (*Wèi*), however, in practice most people will pronounce it in 2nd tone when answering a call (*Wéi*).

是吗？ (*Shì ma?*), a very common interjection, it is similar in tone to the English "Really?" or "Oh yeah?"

旅途愉快！ (*Lǚtú yúkuài!*) When someone is going on a trip, this is a common send-off phrase.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Talking Over the Telephone or Computer to a Friend

你好！我是麦克。
"Hi! This is Mike."

When identifying oneself on the telephone, you use the simple sentence structure we heard in the dialogue.

For Example:

1. 我是麦克。
   Wǒ shì Màikè.
   "I am Mike."

This is a little different than the English method of saying, "This is Mike," on the telephone. However, here is a nice example of a simple sentence structure using the verb "to be" in Chinese. You can see that the word order is the same as in English in this kind of simple sentence, being [subject] + [verb] + [object].

"Time when" Phrases in Chinese

Note the word order in a phrase talking about the time when something occurs. [subject + time when + predicate].

For Example:

1. 我明天去中国。
   Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó.
   "I'm going to China tomorrow."

2. 我每天喝茶。
   Wǒ měitiān hēchá.
   "I drink tea every day."

The Question Particle 吗 (*ma*)

When the particle 吗 (*ma*) is added to the end of a statement, it turns it into a yes/no question.

We have a brief example of this in today's dialogue.

For Example:

1. 是吗?
   Shì ma?
   "Oh, yeah?"

By adding the particle 吗 (*ma*) to the verb, it turns the verb 是 (*shì*) into a question. By adding the question particle to 是, *shì* ("to be"), it has a similar feeling to the interjection "really?"

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #2 How to Make a Chinese First Impression that will Last a Lifetime

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar
7 Cultural Insight

2

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 打扰一下。
2. LILI: 哦，不好意思，请坐。
3. MIKE: 你好，我叫孙麦克。
4. LILI: 你好，我叫张丽。
5. MIKE: 不好意思，请再说一遍。
6. LILI: 张丽，你可以叫我丽丽。
7. MIKE: 丽丽，很高兴认识你!
8. LILI: 我也是。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 打擾一下。
2. LILI: 哦，不好意思，請坐。
3. MIKE: 你好，我叫孫麥克。
4. LILI: 你好，我叫張麗。
5. MIKE: 不好意思，請再說一遍。
6. LILI: 張麗，你可以叫我麗麗。

CONT'D OVER

7. MIKE: 麗麗，很高興認識你!

8. LILI: 我也是。

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Dǎrǎo yíxià.

2. LILI: O, bùhǎoyìsi, qǐngzuò.

3. MIKE: Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Sūn Màikè.

4. LILI: Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Zhāng Lì。

5. MIKE: Bùhǎoyìsi, qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.

6. LILI: Zhāng Lì. Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli.

7. MIKE: Lìli, hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ!

8. LILI: Wǒ yě shì.

ENGLISH

1. MIKE: Excuse me.

2. LILI: Oh, sorry. Please, sit.

3. MIKE: Hello, I'm Mike Smith.

CONT'D OVER

4. LILI: Hello, I'm Zhang Li.

5. MIKE: Sorry, could you say that again?

6. LILI: Zhang Li. You can call me Lili.

7. MIKE: Lili, it's very nice to meet you!

8. LILI: Me too.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
打扰	打擾	dǎrǎo	to disturb
也	也	yě	also, too
你	你	nǐ	you
认识	認識	rènshí	to know, to recognize
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy
很	很	hěn	very, very much
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can
再	再	zài	again
请	請	qǐng	please
叫	叫	jiào	to call
我	我	wǒ	I, me
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello
不好意思	不好意思	bùhǎoyìsi	I'm sorry
是	是	shì	to be

SAMPLE SENTENCES

打扰一下。 Dǎrǎo yíxià. Excuse me for a moment.	咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.
他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
你认识他吗? Nǐ rènshí tā ma? Do you know him?	今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.	请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè gè dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.
我叫子安。 Wǒ jiào Zǐ ān. My name is Zi an.	你叫什么名字? Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì? What is your name?
今年，我妹妹又出了一张专辑，叫《月光》。 Jīnnián, wǒ mèimèi yòu chū le yìzhāng zhuānjí, jiào Yuèguāng. My sister put out another album this year called "Moonlight."	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
你好，我想找安娜。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo Ānnà. Hello, can I speak to Anna?	你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.

哦，不好意思，请坐。 O, bùhǎoyìsi, qǐngzuò. Oh, sorry! Please sit.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

你好，我叫... *Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào...* ("Hello, I'm...")

你好, *nǐhǎo* ("Hello") in Chinese is made up of two words: 你meaning "you," and 好 meaning "good." On very formal meetings you can replace the 你 (*nǐ*) with the formal term for "you," which is 您 (*nín*).

叫 (*jiào*)

The verb 叫 (*jiào*) means, "to call." So to introduce yourself you are simply saying, "I'm called _____." If you would like to ask someone their name you can say, 你叫什么名字？ *Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?* ("What is your name?") 很高兴认识你。 *Hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ.* ("Very nice to meet you.") 我也是。 *Wǒ yě shì.* ("Likewise.")

认识 (*rènshí*)

The verb 认识 (*rènshí*) means "to know," or "to be familiar with," however, in the context of the phrase 很高兴认识你。(*Hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ.*), the implication is that of "to meet," since this meeting signifies a making of one's acquaintance, and thus, thereafter, they will "know" each other.

我也是。 *Wǒ yě shì.*

This phrase literally means, "I also am." In this dialogue, it is said in response to the statement "Nice to meet you" to express a corresponding feeling.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is to Strike up a Conversation and Introduce Yourself to a Stranger.

打扰一下

Dǎrǎo yíxià.

"Excuse me." (Or literally, "Disturb a while.")

This is a phrase used to excuse oneself. The 一下 (*yíxià*) we see tacked onto the end of the verb is a softener. 一下 (*yíxià*) can be placed after a verb to soften the command or request.

再 + verb + (number) 遍

请再说一遍。
Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.
"Please say it again"

To express repetition of an action in Chinese you can use this sentence pattern. Put the 再 (*zài*) in front of the verb and it means to do something "again." Then, as in this case, to be specific about the number of times, you then add the number + 遍, *biàn* (*"time(s)"*). Put it all together and it means, "Say it one more time."

For Example:

1. 再说一遍
   Zài shuō yí biàn
   "Say it one more time."

2. 再说三遍
   Zài shuō sān biàn
   "Repeat it again three times."

Language Expansion

Literally meaning, "not good meaning," 不好意思 (*bùhǎoyìsi*) is a word used to apologize. There are a few ways to apologize in Chinese; another really common word for "sorry" that is used interchangeably with 不好意思 (*bùhǎoyìsi*) is 对不起 (*duìbuqǐ*).

For Example:

1. 不好意思
   bùhǎoyìsi
   "sorry"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Making Apologies in China

There are a few ways to apologize in Chinese, which is great because we all will likely make some embarrassing language blunders, but specifically in this case we hear a very popular one: 不好意思 (*bùhǎoyìsi*). It literally means, "not good feeling/meaning." It can be used to apologize for small things like bumping into someone to saying or doing something embarrassing.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #3 Do People in China Understand Where you are Coming From?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

3

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 你是中国人吗?
2. LILI: 对，我是中国人。
3. MIKE: 中国哪儿?
4. LILI: 我是北京人。
5. MIKE: 哦，北京，我知道。
6. LILI: 你呢? 你是美国人吗?
7. MIKE: 对，我是美国人。
8. LILI: 美国哪儿? 纽约?
9. MIKE: 不，我是加州人。
10. LILI: 哦，我知道了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 你是中國人嗎?
2. LILI: 對，我是中國人。
3. MIKE: 中國哪兒?
4. LILI: 我是北京人。

CONT'D OVER

5. MIKE: 哦，北京，我知道。

6. LILI: 你呢？你是美國人嗎？

7. MIKE: 對，我是美國人。

8. LILI: 美國哪兒？紐約？

9. MIKE: 不，我是加州人。

10. LILI: 哦，我知道了。

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Nǐ shì Zhōngguórén ma？

2. LILI: Duì, wǒ shì Zhōngguórén.

3. MIKE: Zhōngguó nǎr?

4. LILI: Wǒ shì Běijīngrén.

5. MIKE: O, Běijīng, wǒ zhīdào.

6. LILI: Nǐ ne? Nǐ shì Měiguórén ma?

7. MIKE: Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén.

8. LILI: Měiguó nǎr? Niǔyuē?

CONT'D OVER

9. MIKE: Bù, wǒ shì Jiāzhōurén.

10. LILI: O, wǒ zhīdào le.

ENGLISH

1. MIKE: Are you Chinese?

2. LILI: Yes, I'm Chinese.

3. MIKE: Where in China?

4. LILI: I'm from Beijing.

5. MIKE: Oh, Beijing. I see.

6. LILI: What about you? Are you American?

7. MIKE: Yes, I'm American.

8. LILI: Where in America? New York?

9. MIKE: No, I am from California.

10. LILI: Oh, I see.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
你	你	nǐ	you

不	不	bù	negative prefix
纽约	紐約	Niǔyuē	New York
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
对	對	duì	correct
美国人	美國人	Měiguórén	American
你呢	你呢	nǐ ne	how about you
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know
人	人	rén	person
北京	北京	Běijīng	Beijing
是	是	shì	to be
加州	加州	Jiāzhōu	California

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你叫Frank。 Nǐ jiào Frank. You are called Frank.	纽约在美国吗? Niǔyuē zài Měiguó ma ? Is New York in America?
您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?	对，我是美国人。 Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén. Yes, I am American.
他是美国人. Tā shì Měiguórén. He is American.	我叫张飞，你呢? Wǒ jiào Zhāng Fēi, nǐ ne? I am called Zhang Fei, how about you?
你知道他是谁吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?	中国人很多。 Zhōngguó rén hěnduō. There are many Chinese people.

我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.

我从加州来。
Wǒ cóng jiāzhōu lái.

I come from California.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Mike: 你是中国人吗？
Nǐ shì Zhōngguórén ma?
"Are you Chinese?"

Lili: 对，我是中国人。
Duì, wǒ shì Zhōngguórén.
"Yes, I am Chinese."

In Chinese, ethnicity/nationality is expressed by simply adding the word 人 (*rén*) onto the end of the name of the country you are from. Likewise, to express what city or state or province you are from, you can use the same phrasing.

For Example:

1. 我是北京人。
   Wǒ shì Běijīngrén.
   "I'm from Beijing."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is on Having a Conversation about Where you Come From
我是北京人。
"I'm from Beijing."

Forming a Yes/No Question

When 吗 (*ma*) is added onto the end of a statement, it turns the statement into a yes-no question, as in our example above: 你是中国人吗？ (*Nǐ shì zhōngguórén ma?*).

Forming a Follow-up Question

呢 (*ne*) is used to form a follow-up questions. Meaning, it is used to ask the same question as the one previously asked but about another subject or object.

For Example:

1. 你呢？
   Nǐ ne?
   "And you?"

This is used by Lili after Mike has made inquiries about where she is from. She now wishes to ask him the same so she forms her follow up question using this pattern.

Language Tip

There are two words for "where" in Chinese.

For Example:

1. 哪儿
   nǎr
   "where"

2. 哪里
   nǎli
   "where"

Both are correct and universally understood, therefore can be used interchangeably. Speakers of Mandarin from the northern areas of China tend to use 哪儿 (*nǎr*) more

frequently, whereas speakers from the south tend to use 哪里 (*nǎli*).

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Chinese Migrants

Many people in the big cities of China are migrant workers from other areas. Therefore the question of "Where are you from?" can lead to many different answers, with most people telling you their home province or city. During holiday times, mass migration back to hometowns occurs. Often, upon seeing a western face, many Chinese people will automatically assume you are *Měiguórén* ("American").

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #4
The Art of Chinese Small Talk

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
10 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. LILI: 加州很好。天气真好。
2. MIKE: 北京也很好。
3. LILI: 但是北京空气不好。
4. MIKE: 对了，你是做什么工作的?
5. LILI: 我是会计。
6. MIKE: 什么? 慢一点儿，好吗?
7. LILI: 我是会计。
8. MIKE: 对不起，我听不懂。
9. LILI: 我是"Accountant"。
10. MIKE: 你会说英语吗?
11. LILI: 我会说一点儿。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. LILI: 加州很好。天氣真好。
2. MIKE: 北京也很好。
3. LILI: 但是北京空氣不好。

CONT'D OVER

4. MIKE: 對了，你是做甚麼工作的?

5. LILI: 我是會計。

6. MIKE: 甚麼? 慢一點兒，好嗎?

7. LILI: 我是會計。

8. MIKE: 對不起，我聽不懂。

9. LILI: 我是"Accountant"。

10. MIKE: 你會說英語嗎?

11. LILI: 我會說一點兒。

PINYIN

1. LILI: Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. Tiānqì zhēn hǎo.

2. MIKE: Běijīng yě hěn hǎo.

3. LILI: Dànshì Běijīng kōngqì bù hǎo.

4. MIKE: Duì le, nǐ shì zuò shénme gōngzuò de?

5. LILI: Wǒ shì kuàijì.

6. MIKE: Shénme? Màn yìdiǎnr, hǎo ma？

7. LILI: Wǒ shì kuàijì.

CONT'D OVER

8. MIKE: Duìbùqǐ, wǒ tīngbùdǒng.

9. LILI: Wǒ shì accountant.

10. MIKE: Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma？

11. LILI: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

ENGLISH

1. LILI: California is really nice. The weather is really great.

2. MIKE: Beijing is nice too.

3. LILI: But the air quality in Beijing is poor.

4. MIKE: So, what do you do for work?

5. LILI: I'm an accountant.

6. MIKE: What? A little slower?

7. LILI: I'm an accountant.

8. MIKE: I'm sorry, I can't understand.

9. LILI: I'm an accountant.

10. MIKE: Can you speak English?

CONT'D OVER

11. LILI: I can speak a little.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
加州	加州	Jiāzhōu	California
我	我	wǒ	I, me
工作	工作	gōngzuò	to work
什么	甚麼	shénme	what
做	做	zuò	to do
是	是	shì	to be
你	你	nǐ	you
对	對	duì	correct
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)
空气	空氣	kōngqì	air
但是	但是	dànshì	but
北京	北京	Běijīng	Beijing
天气	天氣	tiānqì	weather
好	好	hǎo	good
很	很	hěn	very
会计	會計	kuàijì	accountant

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我从加州来。 Wǒ cóng jiāzhōu lái. I come from California.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
电脑不工作了。 Diànnǎo bù gōngzuò le. The computer doesn’t work.	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
你在做什么? Nǐ zài zuò shénme? What are you doing?	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.
是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	对，我是美国人。 Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén. Yes, I am American.
我不认识他。 Wǒ bú rènshi tā. I don't know him.	北京空气不好。 Běijīng kōngqì bù hǎo. The air quality in Beijing is poor.
他想来，但是太晚了。 Tā xiǎnglái, dànshì tài wǎn le. He wants to come, but it's too late.	我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.
天气真好。 Tiānqì zhēn hǎo. The weather is really good.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	我爸爸是会计. Wǒ bàba shì kuàijì. My Dad is an accountant.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

但是 (*dànshì*).
This is one of the words for "but" in Chinese. In most instances it can be used interchangeably with the other "but" word, 可是 (*kěshì*).

你是做什么工作的？ *Nǐ shì zuò shénme gōngzuò de?*
This is a sentence pattern used to ask someone what they do for a living.

慢一点儿，好吗？ *Màn yìdiǎnr hǎo ma?*
As learned in Gengo Lesson 3, this phrase is used to request that the speaker speak more slowly.

我听不懂。 *Wǒ tīngbùdǒng.*
This phrase is the white flag of surrender, after Mike's attempts to understand. 我听不懂. (*Wǒ tīngbùdǒng*) can be used to express that you don't understand in any listening comprehension situation. You're hearing them, they've said it slow enough...but there's a little "malfunction at the junction," so to speak. There's something not connecting.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of this Lesson is How to Talk about What One Does for Work and other Small Talk

加州很好。天气真好。
Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. Tiānqì zhēn hǎo.
"California is very nice. The weather is really good."

Though the adverb 很 (*hěn*) can be loosely translated as "very," it's not the same as "very" in English. In Chinese, most monosyllabic adjectives are used in combination with 很 (*hěn*); you wouldn't normally say 我好 (*Wǒ hǎo*). Rather you would have an adverb like 很 (*hěn*) before the adjective.

For Example:

1. 我很好
   Wǒ hěn hǎo.

Other adverbs can be used to intensify the degree; for example, as in our dialogue, you can say 真好 (*zhēn hǎo*), which means, "really good."

也 (*yě*)

The adverb 也 (*yě*) means "too," or "also." In Chinese it comes after the subject and before the verb. The 也 (*yě*) cannot come before the subject or at the end of the sentence.

For Example:

1. 北京也很好。
   Běijing yě hěn hǎo.
   "Beijing is nice too."

不 (*bù*)

不 (*bù*) is the marker of negation. Placed in front of an adjective, 好, *hǎo* ("good"), renders it negative.

For Example:

1. 但是北京空气不好。
   Dànshì Běijing kōngqì bù hǎo.
   "But the weather in Beijing is not good."

2. 不好
   bù hǎo
   "not good; bad"

Expressing Ability in Chinese

We use the verb 会 (*huì*) to express ability in Chinese. It can also be used to express ability in other things, including sports, the ability to play an instrument, etc.

For Example:

1. 你会说英文吗?
   Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?
   "Can you speak English?"

2. 她会弹吉他吗?
   Tā huì tán jítā ma?
   "Can she play guitar?"

点儿

verb/adjective + **一点儿。** When we tack on 一点儿 (*yìdiǎnr*) to the end of a word it means, "a little."

For Example:

1. 我会说一点儿。
   Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.
   "I can speak a little."

Language Expansion

Other common professions in Chinese include:

1. 律师, *lǜshī* ("lawyer")
2. 服务员, *fúwùyuán* ("waiter")
3. 司机, *sījī* ("driver")
4. 老师, *lǎoshī* ("teacher")
5. 秘书, *mìshū* ("secretary")
6. 经理, *jīnglǐ* ("manager")
7. 商人, *shāngrén* ("businessman")

More languages in Chinese:

1. 法语, *Fǎyǔ* ("French")

2. 德语, *Déyǔ* ("German")

3. 广东话, *Guǎngdōng huà* ("Cantonese")

4. 西班牙语, *Xībānyáyǔ* ("Spanish")

5. 俄语, *Éyǔ* ("Russian")

Sometimes languages will be referred to with 语 (*yǔ*), as in 法语 (*Fǎyǔ*) for the spoken form of the language, and referred to using 文 (*wén*), as in **英文** (*Yīngwén*). Generally the 文 (*wén*) points to the written form of the language but the distinction is not generally made. **英文** (*Yīngwén*) or **英语** (*Yīngyǔ*), for example, are used pretty much interchangeably.

There are a few different terms to describe the Chinese language in Chinese. In mainland China, generally you will hear it referred to as 普通话 (*Pǔtōnghuà*) or 中文 (*Zhōngwén*). In Taiwan, "Chinese" is generally referred to as国语 (*Guóyǔ*).

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Mixing it Up

It's Mike's lucky day, as in the dialogue, Lili suddenly throws in a little bit of English. She says 我是("Accountant"). This mixing of Chinese and English is very common, especially with speakers of Chinese from Taiwan. The younger generation has been raised around a lot of English and though they are sometimes shy to speak in English, they quite freely mix in English with their Chinese.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #5 Welcome to China! Avoid Immersion Shock with this Lesson

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
10 Cultural Insight

5

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. PILOT: 各位乘客，下午好。 欢迎来到上海浦东机场。今天是星期四，现在是下午三点，今天气温36度。祝您在中国旅途愉快!

2. MIKE: 36度？太热了。

3. LILI: 是啊。对了，我有扇子。

4. MIKE: 我也有。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. PILOT: 各位乘客，下午好。 歡迎來到上海浦東機場。今天是星期四，現在是下午三點，今天氣溫36度。祝您在中國旅途愉快!

2. MIKE: 36度？太熱了。

3. LILI: 是啊。對了，我有扇子。

4. MIKE: 我也有。

PINYIN

1. PILOT: Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo. Huānyíng láidào Shànghǎi Pǔdōng Jīchǎng. Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì, xiànzài shì xiàwǔ sān diǎn, jīntiān qìwēn 36 dù. Zhù nín zài Zhōngguó lǚtú yúkuài.

2. MIKE: 36 dù? Tài rè le.

CONT'D OVER

3. LILI: Shì a. Duì le, wǒ yǒu shànzi.

4. MIKE: Wǒ yě yǒu.

ENGLISH

1. PILOT: Good afternoon, passengers. Welcome to Shanghai Pudong Airport. Today is Thursday. It is now three o'clock in the afternoon. The temperature today is 36 degrees. I wish you a pleasant trip in China.

2. MIKE: 36 degrees? That's so hot!

3. LILI: Yeah. Oh right, I have a fan.

4. MIKE: Me too.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
各	各	gè	each, every	
度	度	dù	degree	noun
祝	祝	zhù	to wish, to bless	verb
您	您	nín	you (formal)	pronoun
在	在	zài	at	
中国	中國	Zhōngguó	China	noun
旅途愉快	旅途愉快	lǚtú yúkuài	have a nice trip	phrase
太	太	tài	too	adverb
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun

有	有	yǒu	to have	verb
扇子	扇子	shànzi	fan	
气温	氣溫	qìwēn	temperature	
三点	三點	sān diǎn	three o'clock	
现在	現在	xiànzài	now	adverb
位	位	wèi	formal measure word for people	measure word
乘客	乘客	chéngkè	passenger	noun
下午好	下午好	xiàwǔ hǎo	good afternoon	
欢迎	歡迎	huānyíng	to welcome	verb
来到	來到	láidào	to arrive at	
上海	上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai	proper noun
机场	機場	jīchǎng	airport	
今天	今天	jīntiān	today	time word
是	是	shì	to be	
下午	下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon	time word, noun
星期四	星期四	xīngqīsì	Thursday	noun
也	也	yě	also	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

各位乘客，下午好。 Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo. All passengers, good afternoon.	外面只有一度不到。 wàimian zhǐyǒu yí dù bù dào . It is barely one degree outside.
外面几度? Wàimian jǐ dù? What is the temperature outside?	今天气温36度。 Jīntiān qìwēn 36 dù. Today the temperature is 36 degrees.

祝你快乐! Zhù nǐ kuàilè ! Wishing you happiness.	祝您旅游愉快! Zhù nín lǚyóu yúkuài. I wish you a pleasant trip.
请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?	他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.
你要去中国吗? 旅途愉快! Nǐ yào qù Zhōngguó ma？ Lǚtú yúkuài! You're going to China? Have a great trip!	他这周末的家庭作业太多了。 tā zhè zhōumò de jiātíngzuòyè tài duō le . He has too much homework for this weekend.
夏天太热了。 Xiàtiān tài rè le. The summer is too hot.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián . I have no money.	他们院子里有太多垃圾了。 tāmen yuànzi lǐ yǒu tài duō lājī le . They have too much garbage in their garden.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	现在是下午三点。 Xiànzài shì xiàwǔ sān diǎn. It is three o'clock in the afternoon now.
现在几点钟? Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng? What time is it now?	请问，您几位? Qǐngwèn, nín jǐ wèi? Excuse me，how many people?
所有的乘客要下飞机. Suǒyǒu de chéngkè yào xià fēijī. All passengers must get off the plane.	老师，下午好. Lǎoshī, xiàwǔhǎo. Good afternoon, teacher.

欢迎你来我们家. Huānyíngnǐ lái wǒmen jiā. Welcome to our home.	欢迎来到上海浦东机场。 Huānyíng láidào Shànghǎi Pǔdōng Jīchǎng. Welcome to Shanghai Pudong Airport.
上海是一個很国际化的城市。 Shànghǎi shì yīgè hěn guójì huà de chéngshì. Shanghai is a very international city.	我爸爸住在上海。 Wǒ bàba zhù zài Shànghǎi. My dad lives in Shanghai.
欢迎来到上海浦东机场。 Huānyíng láidào Shànghǎi Pǔdōng Jīchǎng. Welcome to Shanghai Pudong Airport.	今天特别热。 Jīntiān tèbié rè . It is especially hot today.
今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì. Today is Thursday.	她老公是医生。 Tā lǎogōng shì yīshēng. Her husband is a doctor.
我会在今天下午给你回电话。 wǒ huì zàijīntiān xiàwǔ gěi nǐ huí diànhuà . I'll call you back this afternoon.	我的猫喜欢在下午小憩一会儿。 Wǒ de māo xǐhuān zài xiàwǔ xiǎo qì yīhuìr . My cat likes to take a nap in the afternoon.
今天下午要下雪。 Jīntiān xiàwǔ yào xiàxuě. It's going to snow this afternoon.	各位乘客，下午好。 Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo. All passengers, good afternoon.
这个星期四将是我生命中最重要的一天。 zhège xīngqīsì jiāng shì Wǒ shēngmìng Zhōng zuì zhòngyào de yītiān. This Thursday will be the most important day of my life.	今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì. Today is Thursday.
我们也要米饭。 Wǒmen yě yào mǐfàn. We also want rice.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

The pilot starts out with a greeting. This is a little formal. He says 各位乘客，下午好。(*Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo*). 下午好 (*xiàwǔ hǎo*) is reminiscent of another greeting we are well familiar with: 你好。The greeting pattern is the same except for "good afternoon." We swap out the "you" and change it to 下午 (*xiàwǔ*). The greeting for "good afternoon" in Chinese is literally, "afternoon good." The same can be done for "good morning," i.e. 早上好 (*zǎoshàng hǎo*).

欢迎, *huānyíng* ("welcome").
欢迎 is a great word to learn, because you will hear it almost every day in China when you walk into a store or restaurant. The clerks have this little chant they like to yell out: 欢迎光临 (*huānyíng guānglín*). 来到 (*láidào*) is a formal way of saying "to arrive at" or "to come to."

上海浦东机场 (*Shànghǎi Pǔdōng Jīchǎng*).
This is the main international airport in Shanghai. The domestic airport in Shanghai is called 虹桥机场 (*Hóngqiáo Jīchǎng*).

现在是下午三点..., *Xiànzài shì xiàwǔ sān diǎn...* ("It is currently 3 o'clock in the afternoon...")
现在, *xiànzài* ("now" or "currently"). Notice the word order in this phrase. Literally, "Now is afternoon three o'clock..." The time word comes first followed by "to be," then the morning/ afternoon, etc., then the actual time.

祝您在中国旅途愉快！ *Zhù nín zài Zhōngguó lǚtú yúkuài!* ("I wish you a pleasant trip in China.")
祝 (*zhù*) here means "to wish" someone something. 您 (*nín*) is the formal term for "you." 旅途愉快 (*lǚtú yúkuài*) is a set phrase used to wish someone a good journey/trip.

我也有。(*Wǒ yě yǒu.*)
也 (*yě*) means "also."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Days of the Week, Time, and Temperature
今天是星期四，现在是下午三点，今天气温36度。
"Today is Thursday. It is now three o'clock in the afternoon. The temperature today is 36 degrees."

Days of the Week in Chinese

今天是星期四, *Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì* ("Today is Thursday")

The most common way of expressing days of the week in Chinese:

"English"	Chinese	*Romanization*
"Monday"	星期一	*xīngqīyī*
"Tuesday"	星期二	*xīngqīèr*
"Wednesday"	星期三	*xīngqīsān*
"Thursday"	星期四	*xīngqīsì*
"Friday"	星期五	*xīngqīwǔ*
"Saturday"	星期六	*xīngqīliù*
"Sunday"	星期天 / 星期日	*xīngqītiān/ xīngqīrì*

Alternatively, you will occasionally hear people use these terms:

"English"	Chinese	*Romanization*
"Monday"	礼拜 一	*lǐbàiyī*
"Tuesday"	礼拜 二	*lǐbàièr*
"Wednesday"	礼拜 三	*lǐbàisān*
"Thursday"	礼拜 四	*lǐbàisì*
"Friday"	礼拜 五	*lǐbàiwǔ*
"Saturday"	礼拜 六	*lǐbàiliù*
"Sunday"	礼拜天	*lǐbàitiān*

Expressing the Time in Chinese

现在是下午三点, *Xiànzài shì xiàwǔ sān diǎn.* ("It is currently three o'clock in the afternoon.")

The most formal way to express "o'clock" in Chinese would be三点钟, *sān diǎn zhōng* ("three o'clock")

However, the 钟 (*zhōng*) can also be left off as in the dialogue.

Expressing the Temperature in Chinese

气温36度, *qìwēn 36 dù* ("The temperature is 36 degrees")

度 (*dù*) is the term for "degree." In China they use the metric system so we can assume that this refers to degrees Celsius.

"Too hot!"

太热了。*Tài rè le.* ("(It's) too hot!")

This sentence structure is used to express a great degree of something. Often used in exclamation to an extreme situation, similar to "so...!" or "too....!" in English. The pattern is:

太 + adjective + 了 (*Tài* + adjective + *le*).

For Example:

1. 太冷了!
   Tài lěng le!
   "(It's) so cold!"

2. 太高了!
   Tài gāo le!
   "So tall!"

有 to Express Possession

Subject + 有 + object.

For Example:

1. 我有扇子。
   Wǒ yǒu shànzi.
   "I have a fan."

2. 他有很多钱.
Tā yǒu hěnduō qián.
"He has a lot of money."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Welcome to Extreme Chinese Weather

In this lesson we hear the word for "welcome" (欢迎, *huānyíng*). 欢迎 is a great word to learn because you will hear it almost every day in China when you walk into a store or restaurant. The clerks have this little chant they yell out when someone enters the establishment: 欢迎光临 (*huānyíng guānglín*).

China's climate is one of extremes. The summers are very hot and humid; so much so that five of the main cities of China are referred to as "the fiery furnaces." Conversely, the winters very cold in much of the country.

China uses the metric Celsius when measuring temperatures.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #6 Don't Miss Your Chance - How to Close the Deal in Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
3 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

6

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 今天很高兴见到你。
2. LILI: 我也是。
3. MIKE: 这是我的名片，上面有我的电话号码和电子邮箱地址。
4. LILI: 谢谢，这是我的名片。
5. MIKE: 谢谢，保持联系。
6. LILI: 再见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 今天很高興見到你。
2. LILI: 我也是。
3. MIKE: 這是我的名片，上面有我的電話號碼和電子郵箱地址。
4. LILI: 謝謝，這是我的名片。
5. MIKE: 謝謝，保持聯繫。
6. LILI: 再見。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. MIKE: Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.

2. LILI: Wǒ yě shì.

3. MIKE: Zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn, shàngmian yǒu wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ hé diànzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ.

4. LILI: Xièxie, zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn.

5. MIKE: Xièxie, bǎochí liánxì.

6. LILI: Zàijiàn.

ENGLISH

1. MIKE: It was really nice to meet you today.

2. LILI: You too.

3. MIKE: This is my business card. My telephone number and email address are on it.

4. LILI: Thanks. This is my business card.

5. MIKE: Thanks. Keep in touch.

6. LILI: Goodbye.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
名片	名片	míngpiàn	name card, business card
很	很	hěn	very, very much
是	是	shì	to be
你	你	nǐ	you
今天	今天	jīntiān	today
这	這	zhè	this
也	也	yě	also, too
上面	上面	shàngmiàn	on the top
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy
见到	見到	jiàndào	to see
我	我	wǒ	I, me
有	有	yǒu	to have
电话号码	電話號碼	diànhuà hàomǎ	telephone number
和	和	hé	and, with
电子邮箱地址	電子郵箱地址	diànzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ	email address
谢谢	謝謝	xièxie	thank you
保持联系	保持聯繫	bǎochí liánxì	keep in touch
再见	再見	zàijiàn	good bye

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这是我的名片。 Zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn. This is my business card.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.

他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì. Today is Thursday.	这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.
咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.	他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.
上面有我的电话号码和电子邮箱地址。 Shàngmiàn yǒu wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ hé diànzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ. My phone number and email address is on it.	今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.
今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	你的电话号码是多少? Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo? What is your phone number?
我和你是朋友。 Wǒ hé nǐ shì péngyǒu. You and I are friends.	你可以给我你的电子邮箱地址吗? Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒ nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ ma? Can you give me your email address?
谢谢你的帮助. Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù. Thanks for your help.	谢谢，保持联系。 Xièxie, bǎochí liánxì. Thanks, keep in touch.

Echo，再见！
Echo, zàijiàn.

Goodbye Echo!

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

名片, *míngpiàn* ("name card/business card")

In China it is very common to give out your business card to everyone you meet. It is good to have one on hand at all times. 电话号码, *diànhuà hàomǎ* ("telephone number") can also be expressed (for cell numbers) as 手机号码 (*shǒujī hàomǎ*).

电子邮箱地址, *dianzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ* ("email address")

保持联系, *bǎochí liánxì* ("keep in touch")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Giving and Obtaining Contact Information
这是我的名片，上面有我的电话号码和电子邮箱地址。
Zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn, shàngmian yǒu wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ hé dianzǐ yóuxiāng dìzhǐ.
"This is my business card. My telephone number and email address are on it."

"Nice to meet you."

1. **很高兴见到你。**
   Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.

2. **很高兴认识你。**
   Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.

These are both ways to say "Nice to meet you" in Chinese. 很高兴见到你。(*Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.*) has the meaning of "to see" or "to meet," whereas 很高兴认识你。(*Hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ.*) has the meaning of "to know." They can, however, be used interchangeably.

Possessive Pronouns

There are no possessive pronouns in Mandarin Chinese. Rather, to convey the possessive form, you simply use the pronoun or noun + 的 (*de*).

1. 我的
   wǒ de
   "my," "mine"

2. 你的
   nǐ de
   "your," "yours"

3. 他的
   tā de
   "his"

4. 她的
   tā de
   "her," "hers"

5. 我们的
   wǒmen de
   "our," "ours"

6. 他们的
   tāmen de
   "theirs"

7. 你们的
   nǐmen de
   "your," "yours" (plural)

有 Used to Express Existence

When the subject is a location, 有 (*yǒu*) is used to indicate existence.

For Example:

1. 上面有我的电话号码...
   Shàngmiàn yǒu wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ...
   "My telephone number is on there..."

2. 桌子上有很多杯子。
   Zhuōzi shàng yǒu hěnduō bēizi.
   "There are a lot of glasses on the table."

Language Tip

The word for "telephone number" in Chinese is 电话号码 (*diànhuà hàomǎ*). The word for "telephone" in Chinese is 电话 (*diànhuà*). The word for "mobile phone" in Chinese is 手机 (*shǒujī*). Thus, as nowadays most phones around are mobile phones, you will also hear the term 手机号码 (*shǒujī hàomǎ*) for "mobile phone number."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Handling Business Cards

In China, name cards or business cards are a must to have with you at all times. It is customary when meeting a person to exchange business cards. The card is presented with both hands, held out to the person with the information facing them. In turn, when receiving a business card, one must accept it with both hands, look at the information upon it, and then put away into an appropriate place.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #7 Don't Answer the Chinese Questions Incorrectly!

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
8 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
9 Grammar
11 Cultural Insight

7

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您好，护照。

2. MIKE: 给您。

3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您在中国住多久?

4. MIKE: 请再说一遍，慢一点儿，好吗?

5. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您在中国住多久?

6. MIKE: 十天。

7. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您住在哪儿?

8. MIKE: 长城饭店。

9. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您来中国做什么?

10. MIKE: 做生意。

11. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 好的，谢谢。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您好，護照。

2. MIKE: 給您。

3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您在中國住多久?

4. MIKE: 請再說一遍，慢一點兒，好嗎?

5. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您在中國住多久?

6. MIKE: 十天。

7. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您住在哪兒?

8. MIKE: 長城飯店。

9. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 您來中國做什麼?

10. MIKE: 做生意。

11. CUSTOMS OFFICER: 好的，謝謝。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Nínhǎo, hùzhào.

2. MIKE: Gěi nín.

3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ?

4. MIKE: Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn, màn yìdiǎnr, hǎo ma?

5. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ?

6. MIKE: Shí tiān.

7. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Nín zhù zài nǎr?

8. MIKE: Chángchéng Fàndiàn.

9. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Nín lái Zhōngguó zuò shénme?

10. MIKE: Zuò shēngyì.

11. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Hǎo de, xièxie.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Hello. Passport.

2. MIKE: Here you are.

3. CUSTOMS OFFICER: How long are you staying in China?

4. MIKE: Could you please say that again, a little more slowly?

5. CUSTOMS OFFICER: How long are you staying in China?

6. MIKE: Ten days.

7. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Where are you staying?

8. MIKE: The Great Wall Hotel.

9. CUSTOMS OFFICER: What are you coming to China for?

10. MIKE: Business.

11. CUSTOMS OFFICER: Okay. Thanks.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English

护照	護照	hùzhào	passport
多久	多久	duōjiǔ	how long
天	天	tiān	day
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
饭店	飯店	fàndiàn	hotel
長城	長城	Chángchéng	The Great Wall
来	來	lái	to come
做	做	zuò	to do
什么	甚麼	shénme	what
生意	生意	shēngyì	business
住	住	zhù	to stay, to live
一点儿	一點兒	yìdiǎnr	a bit
给	給	gěi	to give
您	您	nín	you (formal)
在	在	zài	at
中国	中國	Zhōngguó	China
请	請	qǐng	please
再	再	zài	again
说	說	shuō	to say, to speak
遍	遍	biàn	measure word for actions that are the same when repeated, times
慢	慢	màn	slowly, slow
好的	好的	hǎo de	okay

SAMPLE SENTENCES

您好，请出示护照。 Nínhǎo, qǐng chūshì hùzhào. Hello, please present your passport.	您在中国住多久? Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ? How long are you staying in China?
你的生日是哪天? Nǐ de shēngrì shì nǎ tiān? Which day is your birthday?	一天比一天好. Yì tiān bǐ yì tiān hǎo. Each day gets better and better.
您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?	您住在饭店吗? Nín zhùzài fàndiàn ma? Are you staying in a hotel?
長城很奇妙。 Chángchéng hěn qímiào. The Great Wall is amazing.	他来了吗? Tā lái le ma? Did he come?
你在做什么? Nǐ zài zuò shénme? What are you doing?	你在说什么? Nǐ zài shuō shénme? What are you talking about?
你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?	生意怎么样? Shēngyì zěnmeyàng? How is business?
您在中国住多久? Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ? How long are you staying in China?	慢一点儿，好吗? Màn yìdiǎnr, hǎo ma? A little slower, OK?
请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yì bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.	请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?

他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	您在中国住多久? Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ? How long are you staying in China?
请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè gè dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.	再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.
请再说一遍。 Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn. Please, say it again.	我做了好几遍了。 Wǒ zuò le hǎojǐ biàn le. I did it quite a few times.
你可以说得慢一点吗? Nǐ kěyǐ shuō de màn yìdiǎn ma? Can you speak a little slower?	好的，再见! Hǎo de, zàijiàn. OK, goodbye!

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

护照, *hùzhào* ("passport")

给您, *gěi nín* ("here you are" - literally, "give you")

住, *zhù* ("to stay/to live")

Chinese doesn't make a distinction between "to stay" and "to live" - they are both the same verb. Therefore, the context will tell you what they are referring to. *请再说一遍，慢一点儿，好吗？ Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn, màn yìdiǎnr, hǎo ma?* ("Could you please say that again, a little slower?") This phrase was covered in detail in Bootcamp Lesson 3. Please refer to that lesson for more detail on this phrase.

饭店, *fàndiàn* ("hotel")

Chinese has quite a few different ways of referring to hotels. Of course there are different calibers of accommodations and this can account for the different "categories" of hotels. Other terms you may hear for "hotel" include 酒店 (*jiǔdiàn*), 宾馆儿 (*bīnguǎnr*), and 饭馆儿 (*fànguǎnr*).

好的, *hǎo de* ("All right, okay")

This is a great phrase to learn as the universal acknowledgment, used much the same way as we use "all right" or "okay" in English.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Periods of Time, Location, and Purpose

您在中国住多久?

Nín zài Zhōngguó zhù duōjiǔ?

"How long are you staying in China?"

To inquire about "how long" something will go on, we can use 多久 in Chinese.

For Example:

1. 坐地铁要多久?
   Zuò dìtiě yào duōjiǔ?
   "How long does it take by subway?"

Do it again: 再 + verb + (number) 遍

请再说一遍, 好吗?
Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn, hǎo ma?
"Could you please say it again?"

To express repetition of an action in Chinese, you can use this sentence pattern. Put the 再 (*zài*) in front of the verb and it means "again." Then, to be specific about the number of times, you then add the number + 遍 ("number") + *biàn* (*"time(s)"*). Put it all together and it means, "Say it one more time."

For Example:

1. 再说一遍。
   Zài shuō yí biàn.
   "Say it one more time."

2. 再说三遍。

Zài shuō sān biàn.

"Repeat it again three times."

"...Okay?" (...好吗？)

Tacked on to the end of a sentence, like the one above from our dialogue, 好吗？(*hǎo ma?*) is a question tag that is often tacked on to the end of a request in order to soften the tone. Though the equivalent translation in English is as above, "Could you please say it again?" it could be literally translated as, "Please say it again, okay?"

"Where" (哪儿 / 哪里)

There are two words for "where" in Chinese. It depends on the region; speakers from Northern China are more apt to use 哪儿 (*nǎr*), whereas speakers from the south are more commonly apt to use 哪里 (*nǎli*).

"Where are You Staying?/Where are You Living?"

您住在哪儿?

Nín zhù zài nǎr?

"Where are you staying?"

In Chinese, the word for "to live" (as in your home location) is the same as "to stay" (as in a hotel or as a guest somewhere). Therefore context will tell you which 住 (*zhù*) they are referring to.

Location Preposition: 在

在 (*zài*) is a location preposition more or less equivalent to the English "at" or "in." So in the above sentence from our dialogue, we can see that the literal translation is, "You stay at where?" More examples of the location preposition in action:

1. 我的朋友在北京。

Wǒ de péngyǒu zài Běijing.

"My friend is in Beijing."

2. 你的车在那儿。

Nǐ de chē zài nàr.

"Your car is there." (Or, literally, "Your car at there.")

Language Expansion

您来中国做什么?

Nín lái Zhōngguó zuò shénme?

"What are you coming to China to do?"

Generally where the question word appears in the sentence is the same position that the answer will come in. For example, in the above sentence, if one were to answer in full, the answer would be 我来中国做生意。(*Wǒ lái Zhōngguó zuò shēngyì.*)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Importance of Visas

Make sure to get a visa before coming to China! There are very few countries that China will accept travelers without a visa. Japan, Singapore, and Brunei get fifteen days.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #8
Get What you Want Using Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
10 Cultural Insight

8

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 我要去人民广场，请问有几点的车?

2. TICKET SELLER: 下午4点。

3. MIKE: 我要一张票。

4. TICKET SELLER: 16块钱。

5. MIKE: 给你。

6. TICKET SELLER: 这是你的票。

7. MIKE: 谢谢，再见。

8. TICKET SELLER: 再见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 我要去人民廣場，請問有幾點的車?

2. TICKET SELLER: 下午4點。

3. MIKE: 我要一張票。

CONT'D OVER

4. TICKET SELLER: 16塊錢。

5. MIKE: 給你。

6. TICKET SELLER: 這是你的票。

7. MIKE: 謝謝，再見。

8. TICKET SELLER: 再見。

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Wǒ yào qù Rénmín Guǎngchǎng, qǐng wèn yǒu jǐ diǎn de chē?

2. TICKET SELLER: Xiàwǔ sì diǎn.

3. MIKE: Wǒ yào yì zhāng piào.

4. TICKET SELLER: Shí liù kuài qián.

5. MIKE: Gěi nǐ.

6. TICKET SELLER: Zhè shì nǐ de piào.

7. MIKE: Xièxie, zàijiàn.

8. TICKET SELLER: Zàijiàn.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. MIKE: I want to go to Renmin Square. Can you please tell me what time the bus leaves?

2. TICKET SELLER: 4 o'clock in the afternoon.

3. MIKE: I want one ticket.

4. TICKET SELLER: 16 RMB.

5. MIKE: Here you go.

6. TICKET SELLER: This is your ticket.

7. MIKE: Thank you, goodbye.

8. TICKET SELLER: Goodbye.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
要	要	yào	to want
这	這	zhè	this
你	你	nǐ	you
给	給	gěi	to give
块	塊	kuài	(measure word for money)
票	票	piào	ticket
张	張	zhāng	(measure word for flat objects)

点	點	diǎn	o'clock
下午	下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon
几点	幾點	jǐ diǎn	what time
有	有	yǒu	to have
请问	請問	qǐng wèn	may I ask
广场	廣場	guǎngchǎng	square
人民	人民	rénmín	people
去	去	qù	to go
是	是	shì	to be

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.	这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.
是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yì bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.
16块钱。 Shí liù kuài qián. Sixteen Renminbi.	一张票多少钱? Yì zhāng piào duō shǎo qián ? How much is one ticket?
他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.	你的朋友7点来的。 Nǐ de péngyǒu qī diǎn lái de. Your friends came at 7 o'clock.

下午4点。 Xiàwǔ sì diǎn. Four o'clock in the afternoon.	今天下午要下雪。 Jīntiān xiàwǔ yào xiàxuě. It's going to snow this afternoon.
各位乘客，下午好。 Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo. All passengers, good afternoon.	你几点来的? Nǐ jǐdiǎn lái de ? At what time did you come?
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	请问，你是不是王先生? Qǐngwèn nǐ shìbúshì Wáng Xiānshēng? May I ask, are you Mr. Wang?
我们在人民广场见面吧。 Wǒmen zài rénmín guǎngchǎng jiànmiàn ba. Let's meet at People's Square.	我要去人民广场。 Wǒ yào qù Rénmín Guǎngchǎng. I want to go to People's Square.
我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qùle dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.	我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

请问, *qǐng wèn* ("May I ask")
Use this phrase to preface an inquiry or to ask a question. It is very polite.

给, *gěi* ("to give") / 给你, *gěi nǐ* ("here you go")

人民广场, *Rénmín guǎngchǎng* ("People's Square")
Located at the site of the old racetrack in Shanghai, this is a large park and meeting square in Central Shanghai.

车, *chē* ("vehicle")
This can be used to refer to a car, bus, or other vehicle.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Buying a Bus Ticket, Enquiring about Time, and Money in Chinese.

请问有几点的车?
qǐng wèn yǒu jǐ diǎn de chē?
"Can you please tell me what time the bus leaves?"

要 (*yào*) to Express "a Desire to Do Something"

我要去人民广场
Wǒ yào qù rénmín guǎngchǎng.
"I want to go to Renmin Square"

One of the meanings of 要 (*yào*) is "to desire to do something." Therefore, when expressing this, the 要 (*yào*) is followed by a verb, being the action that is desired to be accomplished. In our example from the dialogue above, we see the 要 (*yào*) followed by the verb 去, *qù* ("to go"), completing the thought, "I want to go..."

For Example:

1. 我要喝水。
   Wǒ yào hē shuǐ.
   "I want to drink water."

2. 我要去书店。
   Wǒ yào qù shūdiàn.
   "I want to go to the bookstore."

要 (*yào*) to Express "to Want" Something

Another use of 要 (*yào*) is to express "to want." In our dialogue we hear:

我要一张票。

Wǒ yào yì zhāng piào.
"I want one ticket."

So the pattern is subject + 要 (*yào*) + object

有 (*yǒu*) to Express Existence

请问有几点的车?
Qǐng wèn yǒu jǐ diǎn de chē?
"May I ask, what time are there buses at?"

有 (*yǒu*) in this sentence expresses existence. Literally translated, this phrase would mean, "to have what time of bus?"

Inquring about the Time

几点钟 (*jǐ diǎn zhōng*) or its short form, 几点 (*jǐ diǎn*), are the phrases used to ask about time. The response, as in the dialogue, can be:

(time) + 点 (*diǎn*)

or

(time) + 点钟 (*diǎn zhōng*)

Introduction to Measure Words

Measure words appear in Chinese between a number and a noun, i.e.

number + measure word + noun

In our dialogue we hear Mike ask for:

一张票
yì zhāng piào
"one ticket"

In the same way that in English a person will ask for a "slice of bread" or a "pair of shoes,"

Chinese uses these measure words, or "classifiers," when speaking about a certain number of an object.

Most nouns are associated with a particular measure word. They are often not predictable from the noun, so they must be memorized. This comes with time. The most common measure word is 个 (*ge*).

In the case of the above example, 张 (*zhāng*) is a measure word commonly associated with long, flat objects. Thus it is appropriate that it is the measure word for "ticket."

Measure Words and Money

In the following line of the dialogue we hear another measure word, the one for money:

16块钱
16 *kuài qián*
"16 (literally, "pieces of money")

In China, the currency is Renminbi, however it is inferred when speaking about money. Rather than saying Renminbi, Chinese speakers will generally just refer to prices as:

number/dollar amount + measure word 块 (*kuài*) + 钱 (*qián*) or "money."

In fact, the Chinese love to simplify language so much that in spoken Chinese, many times the word for money 钱 (*qián*) will be omitted and 16RMB will be referred to simply as 16块 (16 *kuài*)

Language Expansion

In China the currency is officially called the Renminbi, though it is seldom referred to this way in daily use. Most often it will be referred to as a 元 (*yuán*), or 一块钱 (*yí kuài qián*), or even simpler, a 块 (*kuài*).

The money is divided up as follows:

A Renminbi, also sometimes called a 元 (*yuán*) or 一块钱 (*yí kuài qián*) is divided into 角 (*jiǎo*) (called 毛 (*máo*) in common usage). There are 10 角 (*jiǎo*) in one 元 (*yuán*). A 角 (*jiǎo*) is further divided into 10 分 (*fèn*).A 分 (*fèn*) is worthless for all practical matters. It converts into about 1/10th of a U.S. penny. 角 (*jiǎo*), 分 (*fèn*), and one 元 (*yuán*) come in both notes

and coins

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Money Denominations

In China, the highest denomination of currency is a 100 RMB bill, roughly equivalent to 15 US Dollars. China is also largely a cash-based society. Therefore when making expensive purchases or paying one's rent, often a huge wad of cash is required.

Counterfeit Bills in China

Counterfeiting is quite a problem in China.The counterfeit bills most in circulation are 100RMB and 50RMB notes. There are some ways of checking if a bill is counterfeit and this skill is one that is well worth learning to avoid being ripped off by fakes.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #9 Your One Stop Shop for All Your Chinese Needs

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

9

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. CLERK: 欢迎光临!
2. (Mike places items on counter)
3. CLERK: 三瓶水，一瓶果汁，一包饼干。
4. MIKE: 那是什么?
5. CLERK: 这是茶叶蛋，很好吃。
6. MIKE: 给我一个。多少钱?
7. CLERK: 一共24块。
8. MKE: 好，谢谢。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. CLERK: 歡迎光臨!
2. (Mike places items on counter)
3. CLERK: 三瓶水，一瓶果汁，一包餅乾。
4. MIKE: 那是什麼?
5. CLERK: 這是茶葉蛋，很好吃。
6. MIKE: 給我一個。多少錢?

CONT'D OVER

7. CLERK: 一共24塊。

8. MKE: 好，謝謝。

PINYIN

1. CLERK: Huānyíng guānglín !

2. (Mike places items on counter)

3. CLERK: Sān píng shuǐ, yì píng guǒzhī, yì bāo bǐnggān.

4. MIKE: Nà shì shénme?

5. CLERK: Zhè shì cháyè dàn, hěn hǎochī.

6. MIKE: Gěi wǒ yí gè. Duōshǎo qián ?

7. CLERK: Yígòng èrshísì kuài.

8. MKE: Hǎo, xièxie.

ENGLISH

1. CLERK: Welcome!

2. (Mike places items on counter)

3. CLERK: Three bottles of water, one bottle of juice, one package of cookies.

CONT'D OVER

4. MIKE: What is that?

5. CLERK: This is a tea egg. It's delicious.

6. MIKE: Give me one. How much?

7. CLERK: Altogether it's 24 RMB.

8. MIKE: OK, thanks.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
欢迎光临	歡迎光臨	huānyíng guānglín	welcome	phrase
一共	一共	yígòng	all together	adverb
钱	錢	qián	money	noun
多少	多少	duōshǎo	how much, how many	phrase
给	給	gěi	to give	verb
好吃	好吃	hǎochī	delicious	adjective
叶	葉	yè	leaf	noun
茶	茶	chá	tea	noun
这	這	zhè	this	pronoun
什么	甚麼	shénme	what	question pronoun
那	那	nà	that	pronoun
饼干	餅乾	bǐnggān	cookie, biscuit	noun
包	包	bāo	(measure word for package)	measure word

果汁	果汁	guǒzhī	juice	noun
水	水	shuǐ	water	noun
瓶	瓶	píng	bottle	measure word, noun
块	塊	kuài	(measure word for money)	measure word

SAMPLE SENTENCES

欢迎光临，请问您几位? Huānyíng guānglín, qǐngwèn nín jǐwèi? Welcome honored guest, how many of there are you?	我们一共的开销远远超过了我们的收入。 wǒmen yígòng de kāixiāo yuǎnyuǎnchāoguò le wǒmen de shōurù . Our expenses altogether are far beyond our incomes.
这些东西一共十块钱。 Zhèxiē dōngxi yígòng shí kuài qián. All together these things cost 10 RMB.	钱够吗? Qián gòu má? Is there enough money?
这个多少钱? Zhègè duōshǎo qián? How much is this?	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yì bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.
巧克力蛋糕很好吃。 Qiǎokèlì dàngāo hěn hǎochī. Chocolate cake is pretty delicious.	这道菜很好吃! Zhè dào cài hěn hǎo chī. This dish is very delicious!
这是茶叶蛋，很好吃。 Zhè shì cháyè dàn, hěn hǎochī. This is a tea egg, it's delicious.	茶很适合赠送给长辈。 Chá hěn shìhé zèngsòng gěi zhǎngbèi . Tea is a good gift for elders.
我喝茶。 Wǒ hē chá. I drink tea.	这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.

你在说什么? Nǐ zài shuō shénme? What are you talking about?	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
那是什么? Nà shì shénme? What is that?	孩子喜欢吃饼干。 Háizi xǐhuān chī bǐnggān. Kids like to eat cookies.
请帮我买一包饼干。 Qǐng bāng wǒ mǎi yì bāo bǐnggān. Please buy a package of cookies for me.	我喜欢喝果汁。 Wǒ xǐhuān hē guǒzhī. I like to drink juice.
有水吗? 凉的。 Yǒu shuǐ ma? Liáng de. Do you have water? Cold water?	他们一个晚上喝完了五十瓶啤酒。 tāmen yí ge wǎnshang hē wán le wǔshí píng píjiǔ . They finished fifty bottles of beer in one night.
来一瓶可乐。 Lái yì píng kělè. Bring me a bottle of cola.	这条裙子一百块钱. Zhè tiáo qúnzi yì bǎi kuài qián. This skirt is a hundred RMB.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

欢迎光临! *Huānyíngguānglín* ("Welcome")
Reserved for business places, mainly stores and restaurants, this phrase is called out to the patron as they enter the establishment.

茶叶蛋, *cháyè dàn* ("tea egg")
Famously known as the "scent" of Chinese convenience stores, you won't find a convenience store without a bubbling vat of brown tea eggs. Love them or hate them, you've got to try them once. And get used to their fragrance, it's a permeating aroma you won't forget.

很好吃, *hěn hǎochī* ("delicious")
A very commonly used phrase, the Chinese being the food lovers they are.

多少钱, *duō shǎo qián* ("how much money")

一共, ***yígòng*** **("all together")**

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Chinese Measure Words and Money

三瓶水，一瓶果汁，一包饼干。

sān píng shuǐ, yì píng guǒzhī, yì bāo bǐnggān

"Three bottles of water, one bottle of juice, one package of cookies"

Measure Words / Classifiers

给我一个。

Gěi wǒ yí gè.

"Give me one."

Measure words appear in Chinese between a number and a noun, i.e.

number + measure word + noun

In this dialogue we hear some more measure words.

For Example:

1. 瓶 (*píng*) - measure word for "bottle"
2. 包 (*bāo*) - measure word for "package"
3. 个 (*ge*) - most common measure word; here used for "egg"

In the same way that in English a person will ask for a "slice of bread" or a "pair of shoes," Chinese uses these measure words, or "classifiers," when speaking about a certain number of any object.

Most nouns are associated with a particular measure word. They are often not predictable from the noun, so they must be memorized. This comes with time. The most common measure word is 个 (*ge*).

"This" and "That" - 这 and 那 as Demonstratives

As demonstratives, when 这 (*zhè*) and 那 (*nà*) refer to objects or abstract concepts they occur at the beginning of the sentence. They can be used this way in questions or statements.

For Example:

1. 那是什么？
   Nà shì shénme?
   "What is that?"

2. 这是我的朋友。
   Zhè shì wǒ de péngyǒu.
   "This is my friend."

Note: 这 (*zhè*) and 那（*nà*) are also pronounced [*zhèi*] and [nèi], respectively. It depends on the speaker and the region of China. Both are correct and can be used interchangeably.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Convenience on Every Block

Convenience stores are everywhere in Taiwan; on some streets you can find three or more 7-11s in one block. The convenience stores, though compact, seem to be stocked with every item you could possible imagine needing. Though they don't seem overstocked, no matter what you find yourself in need of, you can generally find it. From cheap quick lunches to underwear to bill payments and fax service. With their air conditioning cranked in summer, they can also be a welcome respite from the humidity outside.

Convenience stores in Mainland China are perhaps not as plentiful or well-stocked as in Taiwan, however there are still more than enough to go around. Generally one can find a snack to their liking, if they don't mind chips of the meat- and fish-flavored varieties. Chicken feet in a package are on offer, as well as cheap Chinese "rice wine" (*baijiu*).

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #10
How to Stay in Style in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

10

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. FRONT DESK: 欢迎光临长城饭店。
2. MIKE: 你好，我订了一个房间。
3. FRONT DESK: 请问您有确认号码吗?
4. MIKE: 有，562.
5. FRONT DESK: 好的，孙先生，您的房间号码是112，这是您的钥匙。
6. MIKE: 房间有网络吗?
7. FRONT DESK: 有。
8. MIKE: 早餐是几点?
9. FRONT DESK: 从早上六点到八点。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. FRONT DESK: 歡迎光臨長城飯店。
2. MIKE: 你好，我訂了一個房間。
3. FRONT DESK: 請問您有確認號碼嗎?
4. MIKE: 有，562.
5. FRONT DESK: 好的，孫先生，您的房間號碼是112，這是您的鑰匙。

CONT'D OVER

6. MIKE: 房間有網絡嗎?

7. FRONT DESK: 有。

8. MIKE: 早餐是幾點?

9. FRONT DESK: 從早上六點到八點。

PINYIN

1. FRONT DESK: Huānyíng guānglín Chángchéng Fàndiàn.

2. MIKE: Nǐhǎo, wǒ dìng le yí gè fángjiān.

3. FRONT DESK: Qǐng wèn nín yǒu quèrèn hàomǎ ma?

4. MIKE: Yǒu, wǔbǎi liùshíèr.

5. FRONT DESK: Hǎo de, Sūn Xiānshēng, nín de fángjiān hàomǎ shì yāo yāo èr, zhè shì nín de yàoshi.

6. MIKE: Fángjiān yǒu wǎngluò ma?

7. FRONT DESK: Yǒu

8. MIKE: Zǎocān shì jǐ diǎn?

9. FRONT DESK: Cóng zǎoshàng liù diǎn dào bā diǎn.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. FRONT DESK: Welcome to The Great Wall Hotel.

2. MIKE: Hello. I reserved a room.

3. FRONT DESK: Do you have a reservation number?

4. MIKE: Yes. 562.

5. FRONT DESK: All right. Mr. Smith, your room number is 112. This is your key.

6. MIKE: Is there internet in the room?

7. FRONT DESK: Yes.

8. MIKE: What time is breakfast?

9. FRONT DESK: From 6:00am to 8:00am.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
早餐	早餐	zǎocān	breakfast	noun
早上	早上	zǎoshàng	morning	noun
从	從	cóng	from	preposition
几点	幾點	jǐ diǎn	what time	phrase
钥匙	鑰匙	yàoshi	key	noun
长城	長城	chángchéng	Great Wall	noun
饭店	飯店	fàndiàn	hotel	noun
订	訂	dìng	to reserve	verb
房间	房間	fángjiān	room	noun

请问	請問	qǐngwèn	may i ask	phrase
确认	確認	quèrèn	confirmation	noun
号码	號碼	hàomǎ	number	noun
有	有	yǒu	to have	verb
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr., sir	title
网络	網絡	wǎngluò	internet	noun
到	到	dào	to	preposition

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你早餐吃了什么? nǐ zǎocān chī le shénme ? What did you have for breakfast?	我每天的早餐除了是麦片还是麦片. wǒ měi tiān de zǎocān chúle shì màipiàn hái shì màipiàn . My breakfast every day is cereal and more cereal.
她早餐吃了一个香蕉。 Tā zǎo cān chī le yí gè xiāng jiāo. She had a banana for her breakfast.	他们每天早上都去散步。 tāmen měi tiān zǎoshang dōu qù sànbù . They go for a walk every morning.
这个时节早上还是很冷的。 Zhègè shíjié zǎoshàng hái shì hěn lěng de . At this time of the year it is still cold in the morning.	星期六早上，他被电话吵醒了。 Xīngqīliù zǎoshàng, tā bèi diànhuà chāoxǐng le. On Saturday morning, he was woken by the phone.
我们明天早上见吧. Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshàng jiàn ba. We'll meet tomorrow morning.	现在几点钟? Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng? What time is it right now?
这不是我的钥匙。 Zhè bú shì wǒ de yàoshi. This is not my key.	长城很奇妙。 Chángchéng hěn qímiào. The Great Wall is amazing.

这家饭店不错。 Zhè jiā fàndiàn búcuò This hotel is pretty good.	票订好了吗? Piào dìng hǎo le ma? Did you book the ticket?
你的房间很大! Nǐ de fángjiān hěn dà! Your room is very big!	请问，现在几点钟? Qǐngwèn, xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng? Excuse me, what time is it now?
你的确认号码是七八二。 Nǐ de quèrèn hàomǎ shì qī bā èr. Your confirmation number is 782.	你的电话号码是多少? Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo? What is your phone number?
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián . I have no money.	他们院子里有太多垃圾了。 tāmen yuànzi lǐ yǒu tài duō lājī le . They have too much garbage in their garden.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	王先生，很高兴认识你。 Wáng Xiānshēng, hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ. Mr. Wang, nice to meet you.
你们这里有网络吗? Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu wǎngluò má? Do you have the internet here?	从早上六点到八点。 Cóng zǎoshàng liù diǎn dào bā diǎn. From 6:00 to 8:00 in the morning.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

欢迎光临 (*huānyíng guānglín*)
This is the universal welcome greeting of convenience stores, restaurants, hotels in China.

长城, *Chángchéng* ("The Great Wall")

订, *dìng* ("to reserve")
There are a lot of things you can 订 (*dìng*) in Chinese: hotel rooms, items from stores, reservations.

先生, *xiānsheng* ("Mr.")
The last name will come before the "Mr." in Chinese, as in our dialogue. For example, 王先生 (*Wáng Xiānsheng*). The word for "Mrs." is 太太 (*Tàitai*), and for "Miss" it is 小姐 (*Xiǎojie*).

房间, *fángjiān* ("room")
This can be a room in a hotel or in a house. Some people even call their apartments *fangjian.*

钥匙, *yàoshi* ("key")

网络, *wǎngluò* ("-Internet")
In Taiwan you will hear it pronounced *wǎnglù* ("Room 112"). Some speakers of Chinese, when reading out a number "1" in a phone number, address, room number, etc., will pronounce the 一 (*yī*) as 幺(*yāo*).

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Checking into a Hotel Room, and Asking and Answering Questions

你好，我订了一个房间。
Nǐhǎo, wǒ dìng le yí gè fángjiān.
"Hello. I reserved a room."

Replying to Yes-No questions

There is no direct translation for the word "yes" in Mandarin. To reply "yes" in a yes/no question format, you simply repeat the verb.

For Example:

Q: 请问您有确认号码吗?
Qǐng wèn nín yǒu quèrèn hàomǎ ma?
"May I ask, do you have a confirmation number?"
A: 有。
yǒu.
"Yes." (Literally, "to have")

Q: 房间有网络吗?
Fángjiān yǒu wǎngluò ma?
"Does the room have internet?"
A: 有。
Yǒu.
"Yes." (Literally, "to have")

Replying "No"

When the main verb of the sentence is 有 (*yǒu*), to negate it you add the negator word 没 (*méi*) in front of 有 (*yǒu*).

For Example:

A: 没有。
Méiyǒu.
"No." (Literally, "to not have")

If the question is asked in non-past time and the main verb of the sentence is any verb except 有 (*yǒu*), you add the negator 不 (*bù*) in front of the verb.

"From ... to ..." (从 (*cóng*)...到 (*dào*)...)

从 (*cóng*) and 到 (*dào*) are both prepositions that indicate movement of a subject, which can include time. So just like the English "from 6:00 AM to 8:00AM," Chinese takes the same pattern, using the prepositions 从, *cóng* ("from") and 到, *dào* ("to").

For Example:

1. 从早上六点到八点。
   Cóng zǎoshàng liù diǎn dào bā diǎn.
   "From 6:00 to 8:00 in the morning."

2. 从星期一到星期五。
   Cóng Xīngqīyī dào Xīngqīwǔ.
   "From Monday to Friday."

3. 从这儿到那儿。
   Cóng zhèr dào nàr.
   "From here to there."

Language Tip

For a more detailed understanding of Chinese numbers, check out Bootcamp Lessons 4 and 5 where we show you how to make numbers from 1 to 10,000.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Hostels and Hotels

饭店
fàndiàn
"hotel"

Chinese has quite a few different ways of referring to hotels. Of course there are different calibers of accommodations and this can account for the different "categories" of hotels. Other terms you may hear for "hotel" include 酒店 (*jiǔdiàn*), 宾馆儿 (*bīnguǎnr*), and 饭馆儿 (*fànguǎnr*).

In China, in the bigger cities you can generally find any price range and quality of hotel; from five star to hostel. When you get to some of the smaller cities, on the other hand, on the high end, luxury hotels may be non-existent and on the lower end, cleanliness can be an issue. Therefore, it is safe to say in a bigger city one can find a lot of choices, however in a smaller area, choices may not be as plentiful.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #11 Don't Get Left out in the Chinese Cold (or Heat!)

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
8 Grammar
12 Cultural Insight

11

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. FRONT DESK: 早上好，先生。
2. MIKE: 早。今天天气怎么样?
3. FRONT DESK: 上午天气很好，下午可能下雨。
4. MIKE: 哦？下雨?
5. FRONT DESK: 对，还有，今天很热。
6. MIKE: 哪儿有出租车?
7. FRONT DESK: 在饭店的前面有出租车。
8. MIKE: 谢谢你。
9. FRONT DESK: 不客气。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. FRONT DESK: 早上好，先生。
2. MIKE: 早。今天天氣怎麼樣?
3. FRONT DESK: 上午天氣很好，下午可能下雨。
4. MIKE: 哦？下雨?
5. FRONT DESK: 對，還有，今天很熱。

CONT'D OVER

6. MIKE: 哪兒有出租車?

7. FRONT DESK: 在飯店的前面有出租車。

8. MIKE: 謝謝你。

9. FRONT DESK: 不客氣。

PINYIN

1. FRONT DESK: Zǎoshàng hǎo，Xiānshēng.

2. MIKE: Zǎo. Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng？

3. FRONT DESK: Shàngwǔ tiānqì hěn hǎo，xiàwǔ kěnéng xiàyǔ.

4. MIKE: O？Xiàyǔ？

5. FRONT DESK: Duì，háiyǒu，jīntiān hěn rè.

6. MIKE: Nǎr yǒu chūzūchē？

7. FRONT DESK: Zài fàndiàn de qiánmian yǒu chūzūchē.

8. MIKE: Xièxie nǐ.

9. FRONT DESK: Bú kèqì.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. FRONT DESK: Good morning, Sir.

2. MIKE: Morning. How is the weather today?

3. FRONT DESK: In the morning the weather will be nice. It may rain in the afternoon.

4. MIKE: Oh? Rain?

5. FRONT DESK: Yes. Plus, it's very hot today.

6. MIKE: Where can I get a taxi?

7. FRONT DESK: In front of the hotel there are taxis.

8. MIKE: Thank you.

9. FRONT DESK: You're welcome.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
早上好	早上好	zǎoshàng hǎo	good morning
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
有	有	yǒu	to have
出租车	出租車	chūzūchē	taxi
在	在	zài	at
饭店	飯店	fàndiàn	hotel
前面	前面	qiánmiàn	in front
谢谢你	謝謝你	xièxie nǐ	thank you

不客气	不客氣	bú kèqì	you're welcome
晚上好	晚上好	wǎnshàng hǎo	good evening
晚安	晚安	wǎn'ān	good evening, good night
冷	冷	lěng	cold
太阳很大	太陽很大	tàiyáng hěn dà	sunny
热	熱	rè	hot
还有	還有	háiyǒu	in addition, still
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr., sir
早	早	zǎo	early, morning
今天	今天	jīntiān	today
天气	天氣	tiānqì	weather
怎么样	怎麼樣	zěnmeyàng	how is it
上午	上午	shàngwǔ	morning
很	很	hěn	very, very much
好	好	hǎo	good
下午	下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon
可能	可能	kěnéng	possibly, possible
下雨	下雨	xiàyǔ	rain
对	對	duì	correct
地方	地方	dìfāng	place

SAMPLE SENTENCES

早上好，先生。 Zǎoshàng hǎo，Xiānshēng. Good morning, Sir.	您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	哪儿有出租车? Nǎr yǒu chūzūchē？ Where can I get a taxi?
他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	在饭店的前面有出租车。 Zài fàndiàn de qiánmiàn yǒu chūzūchē. There are taxis in front of the hotel.
你在我的前面。 Nǐ zài wǒ de qiánmiàn. You're in front of me.	谢谢你的礼物。 Xièxiè nǐ de lǐwù. Thank you for your gift.
不客气。 Bú kèqì You're welcome.	李先生，晚上好。 Lǐ Xiānshēng, wǎnshàng hǎo. Mr. Li, good evening.
我先走。 晚安! Wǒ xiān zǒu. Wǎn'ān! I'll go now. Good night!	外面很冷。 Wàimiàn hěn lěng. It's cold outside.
今天太阳很大! Jīntiān tàiyáng hěn dà! Today it's really sunny!	今天很热! Jīntiān hěn rè. Today is very hot.
这儿还有位子吗? Zhèr hái yǒu wèizi ma? Are there still any places there?	王先生，很高兴认识你。 Wáng Xiānshēng, hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ. Mr. Wang, nice to meet you.

老板，早! Lǎobǎn, zǎo! Morning, Boss!	今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì. Today is Thursday.
天气很糟。 Tiānqì hěn zāo. This weather is horrible.	天气真好。 Tiānqì zhēn hǎo. The weather is really good.
你的工作怎么样? Nǐ de gōngzuò zěnmeyàng ? How is your work?	一起看电影怎么样? Yìqǐ kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng? What do you think about us watching a movie together?
今天天气怎么样? Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng ? How is the weather today?	上午天氣很好，下午可能下雨。 Shàngwǔ tiānqì hěn hǎo, xiàwǔ kěnéng xiàyǔ. In the morning, the weather will be good; in the afternoon, it might rain.
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
今天下午要下雪。 Jīntiān xiàwǔ yào xiàxuě. It's going to snow this afternoon.	各位乘客，下午好。 Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo. All passengers, good afternoon.
他可能不来。 Tā kěnéng bù lái. He might not come.	今天会下雨。 Jīntiān huì xiàyǔ. It will rain today.
对，我是美国人。 Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén. Yes, I am American.	那个地方怎么样? Nà gè dìfāng zěnmeyàng ? What is that place like?

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

More Greetings:

早上好, *Zǎoshàng hǎo* ("Good morning")

Has the short form, 早, *Zǎo* ("Morning")

Now if it were evening, you could say 晚上好 (*Wǎnshàng hǎo*) or the short form, 晚安 (*Wǎn'ān*).

When speaking of "forenoon" and "afternoon," we hear in the dialogue 上午 and 下午, (*shàngwǔ*) and (*xiàwǔ*).

Weather words:

1. 天气, *tiānqì* ("weather")
2. 下雨, *xiàyǔ* ("rain")
3. 热, *rè* ("hot")
4. 冷, *lěng* ("cold")
5. 太阳很大, *tàiyáng hěn dà* ("sunny")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Talk about the Weather in Chinese

怎么样

zěnmeyàng

"How / How is it"

The question expression 怎么样 (*zěnmeyàng*) asks for a description. In the case of our dialogue, the description requested is that of the weather.

For Example:

1. 今天天气怎么样?
   Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng?
   "How is the weather today?"

It can also be asked about almost anything you would like a description of or to know how something or someone is.

For Example:

1. 他怎么样?
   Tā zěnmeyàng?
   "What's he like? " or "How is he?"

2. 那个地方怎么样?
   Nàgè dìfāng zěnmeyàng?
   "What is that place like?" or "How is that place?"

还有, *háiyǒu* ("In addition")

还有 (*háiyǒu*), when occurring at the beginning of a sentence or phrase, introduces additional information. It is similar to "in addition" or "plus" in English.

For Example:

1. 还有，今天很热。
   Háiyǒu，jīntiān hěn rè.
   "Plus, today is very hot."

哪儿 / 哪里 ("Where")

There are two words for "where" in Chinese. It depends on the region; speakers from northern China are more apt to use 哪儿 (*nǎr*), whereas speakers from the south more commonly use 哪里 (*nǎlǐ*).

A hint about using question words in Chinese: questions and their answers take the same phrase order.

For Example:

Q: 哪儿有出租车?
Nǎr yǒu chūzūchē?

"Where are there taxis?"

A: 在饭店的前面有出租车。
Zài fàndiàn de qiánmiàn yǒu chūzūchē.
"In front of the hotel there are taxis."

The question word is just swapped out for the answer.

有 (*yǒu*) to Express Existence

有 (*yǒu*) indicates existence when the subject is a location. Similar to "there is" or "there are" in English.

For Example:

1. 在饭店的前面有出租车。
   Zài fàndiàn de qiánmiàn yǒu chūzūchē.
   "In front of the hotel there are taxis."

在 (*zài*) here functions as a preposition meaning "at."

Indication Location with Respect to a Reference Point

---

1. 饭店的前面...
   Fàndiàn de qiánmiàn...
   "In front of the hotel..."

To indicate the location of something relative to a reference point, we use this pattern:

reference point + 的 (*de*) + location word.

In our dialogue line, the 饭店, *fàndiàn* ("hotel") is the reference point, and 前面, *qiánmiàn* ("in front") is the location word.

For Example:

1. 房子的后面
   fángzi de hòumiàn
   "behind the house"

2. 饭店的对面
   fàndiàn de duìmiàn
   "across from the hotel"

Please note that in the above pattern, the 的 (*de*) can be omitted**.**

Here are some more location words for your reference:

1. 里面, *lǐmiàn* ("inside")
2. 外面, *wàimiàn* ("outside")
3. 后面, *hòumiàn* ("behind")
4. 左边, *zuǒbiān* ("left side")
5. 右边, *yòubiān* ("right side")
6. 中间, *zhōngjiān* ("in the middle of" or "between")
7. 旁边, *pángbiān* ("beside")
8. 上面, *shàngmiàn* ("on top")
9. 下面, *xiàmiàn* ("below")

Please note that for 里面 (*lǐmiàn*), 外面 (*wàimiàn*), 上面 (*shàngmiàn*), and 下面 (*xiàmiàn*), the pattern can be further simplified to just say:

1. 房子里
   fángzǐ lǐ
   "in the house"

2. 房子外

fángzǐ wài

"outside the house"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Hail the Chinese Taxi!

Taxis in China are relatively inexpensive. Though subway systems in the bigger cities are generally quite extensive and convenient, they are often very crowded. Deciphering bus systems can be very difficult. Therefore, many locals and foreigners alike opt for taxi taking when possible. That being said, in adverse weather conditions like extreme heat or rain, finding a taxi can prove to be a next to impossible task, with much curbside competition. Opting for a taxi lineup outside a hotel may be a good place for a beginner to start before moving onto hardcore hailing.

Taxi tip: get the hotel to write down the address of your destination in Chinese if possible. Most taxi drivers in China do not speak English and the most reliable way to make sure you get where you want to be is by having it on paper.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #12 Get Where You Need To Go With a Mobile Chinese Language Partner

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
7 Sample Sentences
9 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
9 Grammar
11 Cultural Insight

12

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. TAXI DRIVER: 你去哪儿?
2. MIKE: 我去北京大厦。
3. TAXI DRIVER: 你有地址吗?
4. MIKE: 在这儿。
5. TAXI DRIVER: 你会说汉语吗?
6. MIKE: 我会说一点儿。
7. TAXI DRIVER: 你的汉语不错。
8. MIKE: 没有没有。你会说英语吗?
9. TAXI DRIVER: 我? 不会。
10. MIKE: 哦。
11. TAXI DRIVER: 到了。北京大厦。14块钱.
12. MIKE: 给你钱。我要发票。
13. TAXI DRIVER: 这是找你的钱，这是发票。
14. MIKE: 谢谢。
15. TAXI DRIVER: 再见!

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. TAXI DRIVER: 你去哪兒?
2. MIKE: 我去北京大廈。
3. TAXI DRIVER: 你有地址嗎?
4. MIKE: 在這兒。
5. TAXI DRIVER: 你會說漢語嗎?
6. MIKE: 我會說一點兒。
7. TAXI DRIVER: 你的漢語不錯。
8. MIKE: 沒有沒有。你會說英語嗎?
9. TAXI DRIVER: 我? 不會。
10. MIKE: 哦。
11. TAXI DRIVER: 到了。北京大廈。14塊錢.
12. MIKE: 給你錢。我要發票。
13. TAXI DRIVER: 這是找你的錢，這是發票。
14. MIKE: 謝謝。
15. TAXI DRIVER: 再見!

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. TAXI DRIVER: Nǐ qù nǎr?

2. MIKE: Wǒ qù Běijīng Dàshà.

3. TAXI DRIVER: Nǐ yǒu dìzhǐ ma?

4. MIKE: Zài zhèr.

5. TAXI DRIVER: Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?

6. MIKE: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

7. TAXI DRIVER: Nǐ de Hànyǔ búcuò.

8. MIKE: Méiyǒu méiyǒu. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngyǔ ma?

9. TAXI DRIVER: Wǒ? Búhuì.

10. MIKE: O.

11. TAXI DRIVER: Dào le. Běijīng dàshà. Shísì kuài .

12. MIKE: Gěi nǐ qián. Wǒ yào fāpiào.

13. TAXI DRIVER: Zhè shì zhǎo nǐ de qián, zhè shì fāpiào.

14. MIKE: Xièxiè.

15. TAXI DRIVER: Zàijiàn!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. TAXI DRIVER: Where are you going?

2. MIKE: I'm going to the Beijing Building.

3. TAXI DRIVER: Do you have the address?

4. MIKE: It's here.

5. TAXI DRIVER: Can you speak Chinese?

6. MIKE: I can speak a little.

7. TAXI DRIVER: Your Chinese is pretty good.

8. MIKE: No, no. Can you speak English?

9. TAXI DRIVER: Me? No, I can't.

10. MIKE: Oh.

11. TAXI DRIVER: We're here. Beijing Building. 14 RMB.

12. MIKE: Here's the money. I need a receipt.

13. TAXI DRIVER: This is your change, and this is your receipt.

14. MIKE: Thanks.

15. TAXI DRIVER: Goodbye!

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
你	你	nǐ	you
没有	沒有	méiyǒu	to not have
到	到	dào	to arrive
块	塊	kuài	(measure word for money)
钱	錢	qián	money
给	給	gěi	to give
要	要	yào	to want
发票	發票	fāpiào	receipt
这	這	zhè	this
是	是	shì	to be
找	找	zhǎo	to give change
谢谢	謝謝	xièxie	thank you
再见	再見	zàijiàn	good bye
不错	不錯	búcuò	pretty good
一点儿	一點兒	yìdiǎnr	a bit
汉语	漢語	hànyǔ	Chinese (language)
去	去	qù	to go
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where
我	我	wǒ	I, me
北京	北京	Běijīng	Beijing
大厦	大廈	dàshà	building
大楼	大樓	dàlóu	building
有	有	yǒu	to have
地址	地址	dìzhǐ	address

在	在	zài	at
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here
会	會	huì	to be able to
说	說	shuō	to speak
英语	英語	yīngyǔ	English

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我没有见过他。 Wǒ méiyǒu jiàn guò tā. I haven't seen him before.
从这边到那边要多久? Cóng zhèbiān dào nàbiān yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	这条裙子一百块钱. Zhè tiáo qúnzi yì bǎi kuài qián. This skirt is one hundred RMB.
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián. I don't have any money.	请给我一杯水。 Qǐng gěi wǒ yì bēi shuǐ. Please give me a glass of water.
他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.	我要发票。 Wǒ yào fāpiào. I need a receipt.
这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.
这是找你的钱。 Zhè shì zhǎo nǐ de qián. This is your change.	谢谢你的帮助. Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù. Thanks for your help.

Echo，再见! Echo, zàijiàn. Goodbye Echo!	这本书不错。 Zhè běn shū búcuò. This book is pretty good.
慢一点儿，好吗? Màn yìdiǎnr, hǎo ma? A little slower, OK?	你会说汉语吗? Nǐ huì shuō hànyǔ ma? Can you speak Chinese?
我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qù le dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.	我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.
您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.	我去北京大厦。 Wǒ qù Běijīng Dàshà. I'm going to the Beijing Building.
我去北京大楼。 Wǒ qù Běijīng dàlóu. I'm going to the Beijing building.	这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?
你有地址吗? Nǐ yǒu dìzhǐ ma? Do you have the address?	他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.
我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.	你会弹吉他吗? Nǐ huì tán jítā ma? Can you play guitar?

你会说英语吗? Nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma? Can you speak English?	我不会说英语。 Wǒ búhuì shuō yīngyǔ. I can't speak English.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

你去哪儿？ *Nǐ qù nǎr?* ("Where are you going").
You can omit the subject as well; many drivers will simply say 去哪儿？ (*Qù nǎr?*)

大厦, *dàshà* ("building")
Some people will use the term 大楼 (*dàlóu*).

汉语 (*hànyǔ*)
Another word for "Chinese language." Other terms you may hear are 中文 (*zhōngwén*), 普通话 (*pǔtōnghuà*), etc.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Language Needed in a Taxi in China
哪儿 (*nǎr*) / 哪里 (*nǎlǐ*)
"Where"

There are two words for "where" in Chinese. It depends on the region; speakers from northern China are more apt to use 哪儿 (*nǎr*), whereas speakers from the south more commonly use 哪里 (*nǎlǐ*).

A hint about using question words in Chinese: questions and their answers take the same phrase order.

For Example:

Q: 哪儿有出租车?
Nǎr yǒu chūzūchē?
"Where are there taxis?"

A: 在饭店的前面有出租车。

Zài fàndiàn de qiánmiàn yǒu chūzūchē.
"In front of the hotel there are taxis."

The question word is just swapped out for the answer.

Also of note: the subject in this type of question can be omitted. For example, the taxi driver will often just say 去哪儿？ (*Qù nǎr?*), with the answer being 去北京大厦。(*Qù Běijīng Dàshà*).

Expressing Ability in Chinese

---

1. 你会说汉语吗？
   Nǐ huì shuō hànyǔ ma?
   "Can you speak Chinese?"

We use the verb 会 (*huì*) to express ability in Chinese.

Once again, we use the phrasing of the question to answer.

For Example:

1. 我会说一点儿。
   Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.
   "I can speak a little."

Chinese doesn't have a simple "yes" or "no" like we do in English. If you wish to answer a simple "yes" or "no," you just repeat the main verb from the question. In this case:

1. 会
   huì.
   "Yes."

2. 不会
   Bù huì.
   "No."

The verb 会 (*huì*) can also be used to express ability in other things including sports, ability to play an instrument, etc.

For Example:

1. 她会弹吉他吗?
   Tā huì tán jítā ma?
   "Can she play guitar?"

要 (*yào*) to Express "To Want"

Another use of 要 (*yào*) is to express "to want" or "to need." In our dialogue we hear 我要发票。*Wǒ yào fāpiào.* ("I want a receipt").

So the pattern is: Subject + 要 (*yào*) + object

Language Tip

In this dialogue we hear the English language referred to as **英语** (*yīngyǔ*). Sometimes languages will be referred to with 语 (*yǔ*), as in 法语 (*fǎyǔ*) for the spoken form of the language, and referred to using 文 (*wén*), as in 英文 (*yīngwén*). Generally the 文 (*wén*) points to the written form of the language but the distinction is not generally made. **英文** (*yīngwén*) and **英语** (*yīngyǔ*), for example, are used pretty much interchangeably.
There are a few different terms to describe the Chinese language, in Chinese. In Mainland China, generally you will hear it referred to as 普通话 (*pǔtōnghuà*) or 中文 (*zhōngwén*).

In Taiwan, "Chinese" is generally referred to as 国语 (*guóyǔ*).

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Honesty is the Best Policy

Generally the taxi drivers of China are honest, however, you may encounter some who will take you 'the long way around' or not turn on the meter and demand exorbitant prices from unwitting tourists. The best way to protect yourself is to make sure the taxi driver uses the meter and to only pay the fare registered on it. Also, choose taxis from the bigger companies;

generally the drivers are more professional and are identified by their taxi driver ID number on the dashboard of the car.

The largest denomination of bill in Chinese currency is a 100RMB note (approx $15.00USD). It is always advisable to try and keep smaller bills on hand for paying taxi drivers. In fact, if you try to give them a 100RMB note first thing in the day, some cab drivers will be very displeased, 1) because they likely haven't generated very much change yet at this point in the day, and 2) it will be considered a sign of bad luck for that day's business.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #13 Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
7 Sample Sentences
10 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
10 Grammar

13

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. RECEPTIONIST: 早上好，欢迎您来国美。

2. MIKE: 你好，我和王经理约了9点见面。

3. RECEPTIONIST: 请问您贵姓?

4. MIKE: 我姓孙。

5. RECEPTIONIST: 请稍等。

6. RECEPTIONIST AGAIN: 请这边走。

7. MANAGER WANG: 迈克，好久不见!

8. MIKE: 好久不见。我从美国给你带了礼物。

9. MANAGER WANG: 谢谢。

10. MIKE: 你最近怎么样?

11. MANAGER WANG: 非常忙。今天我们有很多工作要做。

12. MIKE: 当然。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. RECEPTIONIST: 早上好，歡迎您來國美。

2. MIKE: 你好，我和王經理約了9點見面。

3. RECEPTIONIST: 請問您貴姓?

4. MIKE: Mike Smith. 我姓孫。

5. RECEPTIONIST: 請稍等。

6. RECEPTIONIST AGAIN: 請這邊走。

7. MANAGER WANG: 邁克，好久不見!

8. MIKE: 好久不見。我從美國給你帶了禮物。

9. MANAGER WANG: 謝謝。

10. MIKE: 你最近怎麼樣?

11. MANAGER WANG: 非常忙。今天我們有很多工作要做。

12. MIKE: 當然。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. RECEPTIONIST: Zǎoshàng hǎo, huānyíng nín lái Guóměi.

2. MIKE: Nǐhǎo, wǒ hé Wáng Jīnglǐ yuē le jiǔ diǎn jiànmiàn.

3. RECEPTIONIST: Qǐngwèn nín guì xìng?

4. MIKE: Wǒ xìng Sūn.

5. RECEPTIONIST: Qǐng shāoděng.

6. RECEPTIONIST: Qǐng zhèbiān zǒu.

7. MANAGER WANG: Màikè, hǎojiǔbújiàn!

8. MIKE: Hǎojiǔbújiàn. Wǒ cóng Měiguó gěi nǐ dài le lǐwù.

9. MANAGER WANG: Xièxie.

10. MIKE: Nǐ zuìjìn zěnmeyàng?

11. MANAGER WANG: Fēicháng máng. Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò.

12. MIKE: Dāngrán.

ENGLISH

1. RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Welcome to Guomei.

CONT'D OVER

2. MIKE: Hello. Manager Wang and I have an appointment arranged for nine o'clock.

3. RECEPTIONIST: May I have your name please?

4. MIKE: My surname is Smith.

5. RECEPTIONIST: One moment, please.

6. RECEPTIONIST: Please come this way.

7. MANAGER WANG: Mike, long time, no see!

8. MIKE: Long time, no see. I brought you a gift from America.

9. MANAGER WANG: Thank you.

10. MIKE: How have you been lately?

11. MANAGER WANG: Extremely busy. We have a lot of work to do today.

12. MIKE: Of course.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
早上好	早上好	zǎoshàng hǎo	good morning

姓	姓	xìng	last name, family name
贵	貴	guì	expensive, precious
请问	請問	qǐng wèn	may I ask
见面	見面	jiànmiàn	to meet
谢谢	謝謝	xièxie	thank you
最近	最近	zuìjìn	recently, lately
怎么样	怎麼樣	zěnmeyàng	how is it
非常	非常	fēicháng	extremely
忙	忙	máng	busy
有	有	yǒu	to have
很	很	hěn	very, very much
多	多	duō	many, much
工作	工作	gōngzuò	to work
要	要	yào	to want
做	做	zuò	to do
当然	當然	dāngrán	of course, indeed
稍等	稍等	shāoděng	to wait a moment
好久不见	好久不見	hǎojiǔbújiàn	long time no see
从	從	cóng	from
欢迎	歡迎	huānyíng	to welcome
您	您	nín	you (formal)
来	來	lái	to come
国	國	guó	country, state
美	美	měi	beautiful

你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello
我	我	wǒ	I, me
和	和	hé	and, with
经理	經理	jīnglǐ	manager
点	點	diǎn	o'clock
请	請	qǐng	please
这边	這邊	zhèbiān	here, around here
美国	美國	Měiguó	United States of America
礼物	禮物	lǐwù	gift
带	帶	dài	to bring
给	給	gěi	to give
走	走	zǒu	walk

SAMPLE SENTENCES

早上好，先生。 Zǎoshàng hǎo，Xiānshēng. Good morning, Sir.	您贵姓? Nín guì xìng? What is your surname?
你买的衣服都很贵! Nǐ mǎi de yīfu dōu hěn guì. The clothes you buy are all very expensive.	请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guì xìng? May I ask your name?
我们约个时间见面吧。 Wǒmen yuē gè shíjiān jiànmiàn ba. Let's arrange a time to meet.	谢谢你的帮助. Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù. Thanks for your help.

最近我很忙。 Zuìjìn wǒ hěn máng 。 Recently I've been very busy.	你最近好吗? Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo ma? How have you been lately?
你觉得怎么样? Nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng? What do you think?	这个菜非常好。 Zhègè cài fēicháng hǎo. This dish is extremely good.
你最近忙吗? Nǐ zuìjìn máng ma? Have you been busy lately?	这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	今天我们有很多工作要做。 Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò. We have a lot of work to do today.
电脑不工作了。 Diànnǎo bù gōngzuò le. The computer doesn’t work.	他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.
你在做什么? Nǐ zài zuò shénme? What are you doing?	我当然喜欢! Wǒ dāngrán xǐhuān! Of course I like it!
请稍等。 Qǐng shāoděng. Please wait a moment.	从这边到那边要多久? Cóng zhèbiān dào nàbiān yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?
欢迎您来国美。 Huānyíng nín lái Guóměi. Welcome to Guomei.	请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?

他今天晚上来。 Tā jīntiān wǎnshàng lái. He is coming tonight.	这是什么国家? Zhè shì shénme guójiā? What country is this?
北京很美。 Běijīng hěn měi. Beijing is very beautiful.	他的女朋友是个美女。 Tā de nǚpéngyou shì gè měinǚ. His girlfriend is a beautiful woman.
你好，我想找安娜。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo Ānnà. Hello, can I speak to Anna?	你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.
我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	我和你是朋友。 Wǒ hé nǐ shì péngyǒu. You and I are friends.
王经理很用功。 Wáng Jīnglǐ hěn yònggōng. Manager Wang is very diligent.	你的朋友7点来的。 Nǐ de péngyǒu qī diǎn lái de. Your friends came at 7 o'clock.
下午4点。 Xiàwǔ sì diǎn. Four o'clock in the afternoon.	请帮我拿一下这个东西。 Qǐng bāng wǒ ná yíxià zhè gè dōngxi. Please hold this for me for a moment.
请这边走。 Qǐng zhèbiān zǒu. Please walk this way.	我来自美国。 Wǒ láizì Měiguó. I come from America.
这是你带的吗? Zhè shì nǐ dài de ma? Did you bring this?	我从美国给你带了礼物。 Wǒ cóng Měiguó gěi nǐ dài lǐwù. I brought a gift for you from America.

我们走吧。
Wǒmen zǒu ba.

Let's go.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

王经理, *Wáng Jīnglǐ* ("Manager Wang")
Like other titles in Chinese, 经理 (*Jīnglǐ*), which means "Manager," comes after the surname. Generally in a business setting, one will address a person with their title and surname.

约, *yuē* ("to arrange")
Often used in the context of arranging to meet someone or arranging a date with someone.

见面, *jiànmiàn* ("to meet")
We learned in Lesson 3 the phrase "Nice to meet you" using the verb '认识', or "to know." We also learned another way to say the same thing using the verb 见到, or "to see." 见面 (*jiànmiàn*) is the stand alone verb for "to meet."

请稍等。(*Qǐng shāo děng.*)
This phrase is the standard, "Please wait a moment."

请这边走。*Qǐng zhèbian zǒu.* ("Please come this way.")
Literally, "Please here walk."

好久不见, *Hǎojiǔbùjiàn* ("Long time no see.")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Business Etiquette and Forms of Address in Chinese
你好，我和王经理约了9点见面。
"Hello. Manager Wang and I have an appointment arranged for 9 o'clock."

给, gěi ("for") as a Preposition

Sometimes the word 给 (*gěi*) is a verb ("to give"), but sometimes it is used as a preposition ("for; on behalf of"). When a preposition, it indicates the beneficiary of an action performed by

another. A classic use of 给 (*gěi*) as a preposition is found in this lesson's dialogue.

For Example:

1. 我从美国给你带了礼物。
   Wǒ cóng Měiguó gěi nǐ dài le lǐwù.
   "I brought you a gift from America."

So in this sentence, the beneficiary of the action is Manager Wang. The action he is beneficiary of is Mike bringing him a gift from America. Here, the 给你 (*gěi nǐ*) means, "for you." So, literally translated, this sentence means, "I from America for you brought a gift."

Because 给 (*gěi*) is also very commonly used as a verb, how can you tell them apart? Well, when the 给 (*gěi*) is followed by a noun but no verb, you know it is being used as a verb.

For Example:

1. 她给我礼物。
   Tā gěi wǒ lǐwù.
   "She gave me a gift."

When the 给 (*gěi*) is followed by a noun and a verb then you know it is acting as a preposition.

For Example:

1. 她给我带了礼物。
   Tā gěi wǒ dài le lǐwù.
   "She brought a gift for me."

Asking Someone's Name

In more formal settings, as in the business setting in this dialogue, a person will use the following phrase to inquire of someone's name:

1. 您贵姓?
   Nǐn guì xìng?
   "Your surname is?"

To which one would respond:

1. 我姓_____.
   Wǒ xìng _____.
   "My surname is _____."

A less formal way to ask someone their name is to say 你叫什么名字？, *Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?* ("What is your name?").

A correct response to this is generally one's full name; not just the surname.

For Example:

1. 我教史麦克。
   Wǒ jiào Shǐ Màikè.
   "I'm Shi Maike."

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #14 Making the Most of Your Time in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
9 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
9 Grammar

14

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MANAGER WANG: 这是今天的行程。

2. 7月23日 星期五

3. 上午十点 在办公室见希望公司的李先生

4. 中午十二点在上海饭店和东方汽车公司的陈先生吃午饭

5. 下午三点半和陈先生一起参观他们的工厂

6. 晚上七点 和新东方公司吃晚饭

7. MIKE: 哇，好多事情啊。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MANAGER WANG: 這是今天的行程。

2. 7月23日 星期五

3. 上午十點 在辦公室見希望公司的李先生

4. 中午十二點在上海飯店和東方汽車公司的陳先生吃午飯

5. 下午三點半和陳先生一起參觀他們的工廠

6. 晚上七點 和新東方公司吃晚飯

CONT'D OVER

7. MIKE: 哇，好多事情啊。

PINYIN

1. MANAGER WANG: Zhè shì jīntiān de xíngchéng.

2. Qī yuè èrshísān rì xīngqīwǔ

3. Shàngwǔ shí diǎn zài bàngōngshì jiàn Xīwàng Gōngsī de Lǐ Xiānshēng

4. Zhōngwǔ shíèr diǎn zài Shànghǎi Fàndiàn hé Dōngfāng Qìchē Gōngsī de Chén Xiānshēng chī wǔfàn

5. Xiàwǔ sān diǎn bàn hé Chén Xiānshēng yìqǐ cānguān tāmen de gōngchǎng

6. Wǎnshàng qī diǎn hé Xīndōngfāng Gōngsī chī wǎnfàn

7. MIKE: Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a.

ENGLISH

1. MANAGER WANG: This is today's schedule.

2. July 23, Friday

3. Ten o'clock in the morning—Meet Mr. Li of the Hope Company at the office.

4. Twelve o'clock noon—Eat lunch with Mr. Chen of Eastern Auto Company at the Shanghai Hotel.

CONT'D OVER

5. Three thirty in the afternoon—Go for a tour with Mr. Chen of their factory.

6. Seven o'clock in the evening—Dinner with the New Eastern Company.

7. MIKE: Wow, so many things.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
今天	今天	jīntiān	today	time word
汽车	汽車	qìchē	automobile	noun
陈	陳	Chén	Chen (surname)	name
吃	吃	chī	to eat	verb
午饭	午飯	wǔfàn	lunch	noun
下午	下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon	time word, noun
半	半	bàn	half	numeral
参观	參觀	cānguān	to tour	verb
工厂	工廠	gōngchǎng	factory	noun
晚上	晚上	wǎnshàng	evening	noun
新	新	xīn	new	adjective
东方	東方	dōngfāng	eastern	adjective
哇	哇	wa	wow	interjectory particle
多	多	duō	many, much	adjective
事情	事情	shìqíng	matter, affair, thing	noun
啊	啊	a	mood particle	mood particle
东方	東方	dōngfāng	eastern	adjective

和	和	hé	and, with	conjunction, preposition
的	的	de	possessive particle	particle
行程	行程	xíngchéng	itinerary, schedule	noun
月	月	yuè	month	noun
日	日	rì	day	noun
星期五	星期五	xīngqīwǔ	Friday	noun
上午	上午	shàngwǔ	morning	time word, noun
办公室	辦公室	bàngōngshì	office	noun
一起	一起	yìqǐ	together	adverb
希望	希望	xīwàng	hope, wish	noun
公司	公司	gōngsī	company	noun
李	李	Lǐ	Li (surname)	name
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr., sir	title
中午	中午	zhōngwǔ	noon	time word
上海	上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai	proper noun
饭店	飯店	fàndiàn	hotel	noun
晚饭	晚飯	wǎnfàn	dinner	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今天特别热。 Jīntiān tèbié rè . It is especially hot today.	今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì. Today is Thursday.
我没有汽车。 Wǒ méiyǒu qìchē. I don't have a car.	陈小姐不在。 Chén Xiǎojiě búzài. Miss Chen is not in.

我想吃薯片。
好吃。
"Wǒ xiǎng chī shǔpiàn .
hǎochī ."

I want to eat potato chips.
Delicious.

她每天都吃很多蔬菜。
tā měi tiān dōu chī hěn duō shūcài .

She eats a lot of vegetables every day.

要吃什么?
Yào chī shénme?

What do you want to eat?

我请你吃午饭。
Wǒ qǐng nǐ chī wǔfàn.

I'll treat you to lunch.

我会在今天下午给你回电话。
wǒ huì zàijīntiān xiàwǔ gěi nǐ huí diànhuà .

I'll call you back this afternoon.

我的猫喜欢在下午小憩一会儿。
Wǒ de māo xǐhuān zài xiàwǔ xiǎo qì yīhuìr .

My cat likes to take a nap in the afternoon.

今天下午要下雪。
Jīntiān xiàwǔ yào xiàxuě.

It's going to snow this afternoon.

各位乘客，下午好。
Gè wèi chéngkè xiàwǔ hǎo.

All passengers, good afternoon.

我吃一半就好。
Wǒ chī yí bàn jiù hǎo.

I'll eat half; it's enough.

我要参观他们的工厂。
Wǒ yào cānguān tāmen de gōngchǎng.

I want to tour their factory.

我们经常在夏日温暖的晚上打牌。
Wǒmen jīngcháng zài xiàrì wēnnuǎn de wǎnshàng dǎpái .

We often play cards on a warm summer evening.

网球场晚上也开。
Wǎngqiúcháng wǎnshàng yě kāi.

The tennis court is open in the evening, too.

我们今天晚上去看电影。
Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshàng qù kān diànyǐng.

Tonight we are going to see a movie.

一直有新的创意不容易。
yīzhí yǒu xīn de chuàngyì bù róngyì.

It's not so easy to keep creating new ideas.

这条裙子是新的吗? Zhè tiáo qúnzi shì xīn de ma? Is this skirt new?	晚上七点和新东方公司吃晚饭。 Wǎnshang qī diǎn hé Xīndōngfāng gōngsī chī wǎnfàn. At seven P.M. we will have dinner with the New Eastern Company.
哇，好多事情啊。 Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a. Wow, so many things!	今天我们有很多工作要做。 Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò. We have a lot of work to do today.
我有很多事情要办。 Wǒ yǒu hěn duō shìqíng yào bàn. I have a lot of things to get done.	哇，好多事情啊。 Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a. Wow, so many things!
他去东方公司开会。 Tā qù dōngfāng gōngsī kāihuì. He went to the Eastern Company for a meeting.	你和我一起去看电影吗? nǐ hé wǒ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ma ? Will you go to the movies with me?
我和你是朋友。 Wǒ hé nǐ shì péngyǒu. You and I are friends.	什么馅儿的? Shénme xiànr de? What filling is it?
让我先看一下我的行程。 ràng wǒ xiān kàn yíxià wǒ de xíngchéng . Let me check my schedule first.	这是今天的行程。 Zhè shì jīntiān de xíngchéng. This is today's itinerary.
他下个月出差。 Tā xià gè yuè chūchāi. He is going on a business trip next month.	我最喜欢的节日是国庆日。 Wǒ zuì xǐhuān de jiérì shì guóqìng rì. My favourite holiday is National Day.
你最喜欢的节日是什么? Nǐ zuì xǐhuān de jiérì shì shénme? What's your favourite holiday ?	节日 jié rì holiday

今天是地球日。 Jīntiān shì dìqiúrì . Today is Earth Day.	我星期五休息。 Wǒ xīngqīwǔ xiūxi. I have Friday off.
大多数去北京的航班都在上午。 dàduōshù qù Běijīng de hángbān dōu zài shàngwǔ . Most flights are going to Beijing in the morning.	上午天氣很好，下午可能下雨。 Shàngwǔ tiānqì hěn hǎo, xiàwǔ kěnéng xiàyǔ. In the morning, the weather will be good; in the afternoon, it might rain.
我们的办公室在八号楼。 Wǒmen de bàngōngshì zài bā hào lóu. Our office is in building #8.	我们要一起去参加聚会。 wǒmen yào yìqǐ qù cānjiā jùhuì . We want to go together to the party.
我们一起去吧. Wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba. Let's go together.	我没有未来的希望。 Wǒ méiyǒu wèilái de xīwàng. I don't have any hope for the future.
我邀请了我的父母参加我公司的圣诞聚会。 wǒ yāoqǐng le wǒ de fùmǔ cānjiā wǒ gōngsī de shèngdàn jùhuì . I invited my parents to my company Christmas party.	你在哪家公司上班? nǐ zài nǎ jiā gōngsī shàngbān ? Which company are you working at?
你的公司在哪儿? Nǐ de gōngsī zài nǎr? Where is your company?	李先生是我的老板。 Lǐ xiānshēng shì wǒde lǎobǎn. Mr. Li is my boss.
王先生，很高兴认识你。 Wáng Xiānshēng, hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ. Mr. Wang, nice to meet you.	我们中午十二點在飯店见面吧. Wǒmen zhōngwǔ shí'èr diǎn zài fàndiàn jiànmiàn ba. Let's meet at twelve noon at the hotel.
上海是一個很国际化的城市。 Shànghǎi shì yīgè hěn guójì huà de chéngshì. Shanghai is a very international city.	我爸爸住在上海。 Wǒ bàba zhù zài Shànghǎi. My dad lives in Shanghai.

您住在饭店吗? Nín zhùzài fàndiàn ma? Are you staying in a hotel?	今天晚饭我们吃什么? Jīntiān wǎnfàn wǒmen chī shénme? What are we eating for dinner tonight?

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

行程 (*xíngchéng*)
行程 (*xíngchéng*) means "itinerary, agenda, schedule." It can also be used when speaking of a "trip itinerary," such as 履行行程 (*lǚxíng xíngchéng*), etc.

7月(7 *yuè*)
Making months in Chinese is easy. Simply add the number of the month in front of the word for month; 月(*yuè*).

23日 (23 *rì*)
To state the day of the month, simply state the number followed by the word for day; 日 (*Rì*)

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Talking about an Itinerary
一起 (*yìqǐ*)
"Together"

To express the concept of doing something together with someone, there are a couple of options, as we see in today's dialogue.

Pattern:

和 + (who) + 一起 + ("do what")
(*hé*) + (who) + (*yìqǐ*) + ("do what")
"with" + who + "together" + "do what"

In the above pattern, the 一起 (*yìqǐ*) can be omitted as we see in two of the examples from the dialogue.

For Example:

1. ...和东方汽车公司的陈先生吃午饭
   ...hé Dōngfāng Qìchē Gōngsī de Chén Xiānshēng chī wǔfàn
   "...eat lunch with Mr. Chen of Eastern Auto Company"

2. ...和新東方公司吃晚飯
   ...hé Xīn Dōngfāng Gōngsī chī wǎnfàn
   "...eat dinner with the New Eastern Company"

3. ...和陈先生一起参观他们的工厂
   ...hé Chén Xiānshēng yìqǐ cānguān tāmen de gōngchǎng
   "...tour the factory with"

好多/很多, *Hǎo duō/ hěn duō* ("Many"/"A Lot")

There are two ways to say "many," or "a lot," in Chinese. They are interchangeable; 好多 (*hǎo duō*) with 很多 (*hěn duō*).

For Example:

1. 哇，好多事情啊。
   Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a.
   "Wow, so many things."

Mood Particles

Because Chinese does not change the tone of a word to express mood (that would change the meaning!), they instead use small words called mood particles or modal particles. We see an example of this in our dialogue, in the sentence:

1. 哇，好多事情啊。
   Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a.
   "Wow, so many things."

The mood particles generally come at the end of the sentence. Here we see a very common one: 啊 (*a*). This little word expresses exclamation.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #15 Your Chance to be the Life of the Chinese Party

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
7 Sample Sentences
10 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
10 Grammar
11 Cultural Insight

15

COPYRIGHT © 2015 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MANAGER WANG: 大家辛苦了！这是麦克，从美国来。

2. MIKE: 大家好，我叫麦克，从加州来。我是美国人，我很喜欢中国。

3. EVERYONE: 很高兴认识你。

4. MIKE: 我也是。

5. MR. MA: 你好，我姓马。

6. MIKE: 马先生,你好。

7. MR. MA: 你喜欢中国菜吗?

8. MIKE: 不喜欢……我爱中国菜!

9. MR. MA: 你喜欢凤爪吗?

10. MIKE: 我不知道。

11. MR. MA: 好，我点吧。喝什么?

12. MIKE: 随便。

13. MR. MA: 好，服务员！ 来一份 凤爪,一瓶白酒.

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. MANAGER WANG: 大家辛苦了！這是麥克，從美國來。

2. MIKE: 大家好，我叫麥克，從加州來。我是美國人，我很喜歡中國。

3. EVERYONE: 很高興認識你。

4. MIKE: 我也是。

5. MR. MA: 你好，我姓馬。

6. MIKE: 馬先生,你好。

7. MR. MA: 你喜歡中國菜嗎?

8. MIKE: 不喜歡……我愛中國菜!

9. MR. MA: 你喜歡鳳爪嗎?

10. MIKE: 我不知道。

11. MR. MA: 好，我點吧。喝什麼?

12. MIKE: 隨便。

13. MR. MA: 好，服務員！ 來一份 鳳爪,一瓶白酒.

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. MANAGER WANG: Dàjiā xīnkǔ le！Zhè shì Màikè，cóng Měiguó lái.

2. MIKE: Dàjiā hǎo，wǒ jiào Màikè，cóng Jiāzhōu lái. Wǒ shì Měiguórén, wǒ hěn xǐhuān Zhōngguó.

3. EVERYONE: Hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ.

4. MIKE: Wǒ yě shì.

5. MR. MA: Nǐhǎo，wǒ xìng Mǎ.

6. MIKE: Mǎ Xiānshēng, nǐhǎo.

7. MR. MA: Nǐ xǐhuān Zhōngguócài ma？

8. MIKE: Bù xǐhuān.....wǒ ài Zhōngguócài！

9. MR. MA: Nǐ xǐhuān fèngzhǎo ma？

10. MIKE: Wǒ bùzhīdào.

11. MR. MA: Hǎo，wǒ diǎn ba. Hē shénme？

12. MIKE: Suíbiàn.

13. MR. MA: Hǎo! Fúwùyuán! Lái yí fèn fèngzhǎo, yì píng báijiǔ.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. MANAGER WANG: Great job everyone! This is Mike from the United States.

2. MIKE: Hello everyone! I'm Mike; I'm from California. I am American; I really like China.

3. EVERYONE: Nice to meet you.

4. MIKE: Likewise.

5. MR. MA: Hello, my name is Ma.

6. MIKE: Mr. Ma, hello.

7. MR. MA: Do you like Chinese food?

8. MIKE: I don't like it... I love Chinese food!

9. MR. MA: Do you like chicken feet?

10. MIKE: I don't know.

11. MR. MA: Okay, I'll order some. What do you want to drink?

12. MIKE: Up to you.

13. MR. MA: Okay! Waiter! Bring us an order of chicken feet and a bottle of rice wine.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
大家	大家	dàjiā	everyone, everybody	noun
辛苦	辛苦	xīnkǔ	hard, hard work	adjective
这	這	zhè	this	pronoun
是	是	shì	to be	verb
从	從	cóng	from	preposition
加州	加州	Jiāzhōu	California	noun
来	來	lái	to come	verb
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun
美国人	美國人	Měiguórén	American	noun
很	很	hěn	very, very much	adverb
喜欢	喜歡	xǐhuān	to like	verb
中国	中國	Zhōngguó	China	noun
高兴	高興	gāoxìng	happy	adjective
认识	認識	rènshí	to know, to recognize	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
也	也	yě	also, too	adverb
你好	你好	nǐhǎo	hello	phrase
姓	姓	xìng	last name, family name	noun
先生	先生	xiānshēng	Mr., sir	noun
马	馬	mǎ	Ma (surname)	noun
中国菜	中國菜	Zhōngguócài	Chinese food	noun
不	不	bù	(negative prefix)	adverb

爱	愛	ài	to love	verb
凤爪	鳳爪	fèngzhǎo	chicken feet	noun
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know	verb
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
吧	吧	ba	(particle; denotes suggestion)	particle
喝	喝	hē	to drink	verb
什么	甚麼	shénme	what	question pronoun
随便	隨便	suíbiàn	as one pleases	adverb
服务员	服務員	fúwùyuán	waiter	noun
份	份	fèn	portion, share	measure word
瓶	瓶	píng	bottle	measure word, noun
白酒	白酒	báijiǔ	rice wine	noun
点		diǎn	to order	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

大家辛苦了！ Dàjiā xīnkǔ le! Everyone has worked so hard!	辛苦你了。 Xīnkǔ nǐ le. You've worked hard.
这是你的票。 Zhè shì nǐ de piào. This is your ticket.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.

我从加州来。 Wǒ cóng jiā zhōu lái. I come from California.	我从加州来。 Wǒ cóng jiāzhōu lái. I come from California.
他今天晚上来。 Tā jīntiān wǎnshàng lái. He is coming tonight.	我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.
他是美国人. Tā shì Měiguórén. He is American.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.
我喜欢中国菜. Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguócài. I like Chinese food.	你来中国多久了? Nǐ lái Zhōngguó duōjiǔ le? How long have you been in China?
中国文化很有意思. Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn yǒu yìsī. Chinese culture is very interesting.	今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.
你认识他吗? Nǐ rènshí tā ma? Do you know him?	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.	他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.
你好，我想找安娜。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo Ānnà. Hello, can I speak to Anna?	你好，我叫王国易。 Nǐhǎo, wǒ jiào Wáng Guóyì. Hello, I'm Wang Guoyi.

您贵姓? Nín guì xìng? What is your surname?	王先生，很高兴认识你。 Wáng Xiānshēng, hěn gāoxìng rènshí nǐ. Mr. Wang, nice to meet you.
我姓马. Wǒ xìng Mǎ. My surname is Ma.	中国菜很好吃。 Zhōngguó cài hěn hǎochī. Chinese food is delicious.
我不认识他。 Wǒ bú rènshí tā. I don't know him.	我爱你。 Wǒ ài nǐ. I love you.
你喜欢凤爪吗? Nǐ xǐhuān fèngzhǎo ma? Do you like chicken feet?	我知道问题的答案。 Wǒ zhīdào wèntí de dáàn . I know the answer to the question.
你知道他是谁吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
好，我点吧。 Hǎo, wǒ diǎn ba. Okay, I'll order.	女人喝了水。 Nǚrén hē le shuǐ. The woman drank water.
你在说什么? Nǐ zài shuō shénme? What are you talking about?	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
随便,你点吧。 Suíbiàn，nǐ diǎn ba. Anything is fine; you order.	服务员，买单! Fúwùyuán, mǎidān! Waiter, the bill!

服务员，给我餐巾纸。 Fúwùyuán, gěi wǒ cānjīnzhǐ. Waitress, can I get some napkins?	一份快餐多少钱? Yí fèn kuàicān duō shǎo qián? How much for one order of fast food?
他们一个晚上喝完了五十瓶啤酒。 tāmen yí ge wǎnshang hē wán le wǔshí píng píjiǔ . They finished fifty bottles of beer in one night.	来一瓶可乐。 Lái yì píng kělè. Bring me a bottle of cola.
你喜欢喝白酒吗? Nǐ xǐhuān hē báijiǔ ma? Do you like to drink rice wine?	请不要点你不需要的东西。 qǐng bùyào diǎn nǐ bùxūyāo dōngxi . Please don't order stuff that you don't need.

我们所有人在餐厅点了相同的东西。
Wǒmen suǒyǒu rén zài cāntīng diǎn le xiāngtóng de dōngxī.

All of us ordered the same at the restaurant.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

辛苦 (*xīnkǔ*)

辛苦 (*xīnkǔ*) is said often as a compliment or way of praising someone. It means "hard-working," or "laborious," but in a good way.

凤爪 (*fèngzhǎo*)

凤爪 (*fèngzhǎo*) is "chicken feet," a Chinese delicacy.

随便 (*suíbiàn*)

随便 (*suíbiàn*) is a good word to use when you wish to be non-committal or don't have an opinion one way or the other. Kind of like, "Whatever you like," in English.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Ordering Chinese Food

好，服务员！来一份凤爪，一瓶白酒.

Hǎo! Fúwùyuán! Lái yí fèn fèngzhǎo, yì píng báijiǔ.

"Okay! Waiter! Bring us an order of chicken feet and a bottle of rice wine."

Making a suggestion - The particle 吧 (*ba*)

The particle 吧 (*ba*) at the end of a sentence can convey suggestion, as it does in this lesson dialogue:

Mr. Ma：好，我点吧。喝什么？ (*Hǎo，wǒ diǎn ba. Hē shénme?*)
Mike： 你点吧。(*Nǐ diǎn ba.*)
More Examples:

1. 我们一起去吧.
   Wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba.
   "Let's go together."

Ordering in a Restaurant

A very common way to order a dish in a restaurant is as we hear in this lesson:

来一份凤爪...
Lái yí fèn fèngzhǎo...
"Bring us an order of chicken feet..."

The measure word for a menu item is 份, so one generally uses this measure word when ordering any dish from a menu.

来 (*lái*) means "to come," but in the context of ordering food this phrase is used to mean, "Bring me (or us) an order of..." You just swap out the dish names.

For Example:

1. 来一份宫爆鸡丁，一份西兰花...
   Lái yí fèn gōng bào jīdīng, yí fèn xīlánhuā...
   "Bring us an order of Kung Pao chicken and broccoli."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

服务员！ (*Fúwùyuán!*)

Though yelling across a crowded restaurant for a waiter/waitress to come and serve you may be considered rude in many circles, in China it's par for the course when dining out. When you are ready to order, call. When you need something, call. It's just the culture of the restaurants of China.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #16 Fitting In and Making

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
3 Traditional Chinese
4 Pinyin
5 English
7 Vocabulary
8 Sample Sentences
10 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
10 Grammar
12 Cultural Insight

16

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MANAGER WANG: 干杯!

2. MR. MA: 干杯!

3. MIKE: 干杯!

4. MANAGER WANG: 我们吃吧。

5. MR. MA: 迈克，尝尝这个。

6. MIKE: 好的。这是什么?

7. COLLEAGUE #2: 凤爪。

8. (MC tries it)

9. MR. MA: 味道怎么样?

10. MIKE: 好吃。

11. MR. MA: 再尝尝这个。

12. MIKE: 这个。。。 还好。

13. COLLEAGUE: （哈哈）他不喜欢这个。

14. MR. MA: 迈克，你明天有空吗?

CONT'D OVER

15. MIKE: 有。

16. MR. MA: 明天我们要去杭州,你和我们一起去吧。

17. MIKE: 好啊。

18. MR. MA: 明天上午11点我们在火车站见。这是我的电话号码。

19. MIKE: 好的，明天见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MANAGER WANG: 干杯!

2. MR. MA: 干杯!

3. MIKE: 干杯!

4. MANAGER WANG: 我們吃吧。

5. MR. MA: 邁克，嘗嘗這個。

6. MIKE: 好的。這是什麼?

7. MR. LI: 鳳爪。

8. (MC tries it)

9. MR. MA: 味道怎麼樣?

CONT'D OVER

10. MIKE: 好吃。

11. MR. MA: 再嘗嘗這個。

12. MIKE: 這個。。。 還好。

13. COLLEAGUE: （哈哈）他不喜歡這個。

14. MR. MA: 邁克，你明天有空嗎?

15. MIKE: 有。

16. MR. MA: 明天我們要去杭州,你和我們一起去吧。

17. MIKE: 好啊。

18. MR. MA: 明天上午11點我們在火車站見。這是我的電話號碼。

19. MIKE: 好的，明天見。

PINYIN

1. MANAGER WANG: Gānbēi!

2. MR. MA: Gānbēi!

3. MIKE: Gānbēi!

4. MANAGER WANG: Wǒmen chī ba.

CONT'D OVER

5. MR. MA: Màikè, chángcháng zhègè.

6. MIKE: Hǎo de. Zhè shì shénme?

7. MR. LI: Fèngzhǎo.

8. (Mike tries it)

9. MR. MA: Wèidào zěnmeyàng?

10. MIKE: Hǎochī.

11. MR. MA: Zài chángcháng zhègè.

12. MIKE: Zhègè... hái hǎo.

13. COLLEAGUE: (hāhā) Tā bù xǐhuān zhègè.

14. MR. MA: Màikè, nǐ míngtiān yǒu kòng ma?

15. MIKE: Yǒu.

16. MR. MA: Míngtiān wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu, nǐ hé wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba.

17. MIKE: Hǎo a.

18. MR. MA: Míngtiān shàngwǔ 11 diǎn wǒmen zài huǒchēzhàn jiàn. Zhè shì wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ.

19. MIKE: Hǎo de, míngtiān jiàn.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1.	MANAGER WANG:	Cheers!
2.	MR. MA:	Cheers!
3.	MIKE:	Cheers!
4.	MANAGER WANG:	Let's eat!
5.	MR. MA:	Mike, taste this.
6.	MIKE:	Sure. What is it?
7.	MR. LI:	Chicken feet.
8.	(Mike tries it)	
9.	MR. MA:	How does it taste?
10.	MIKE:	Delicious!
11.	MR. MA:	Now try this.
12.	MIKE:	This... it's okay.
13.	MANAGER WANG:	(ha ha) He doesn't like it.
14.	MR. MA:	Mike, do you have free time tomorrow?
15.	MIKE:	Yes.

CONT'D OVER

16. MR. MA: Tomorrow we are going to Hangzhou. Come with us.

17. MIKE: Sure.

18. MR. MA: We'll meet at 11 o'clock tomorrow at the train station. This is my phone number.

19. MIKE: All right. See you tomorrow.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
干杯	乾杯	gānbēi	cheers, toast	verb
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow	time word
空	空	kòng	free time, empty	noun
要	要	yào	to be going to, have to	verb
去	去	qù	to go	verb
杭州	杭州	Hángzhōu	Hangzhou	noun
一起	一起	yìqǐ	together	adverb
好啊	好啊	hǎo ā	sure, okay	phrase
火车站	火車站	huǒchēzhàn	train station	noun
电话号码	電話號碼	diànhuà hàomǎ	telephone number	noun
喜欢	喜歡	xǐhuān	to like	verb
还好	還好	hái hǎo	passable, so-so	adjective
再	再	zài	again	adverb
吃	吃	chī	to eat	verb

吧	吧	ba	(particle; denotes suggestion)	particle
尝	嘗	cháng	to taste	verb
好的	好的	hǎo de	okay	phrase
个	個	gè	measure word	measure word
什么	甚麼	shénme	what	question pronoun
凤爪	鳳爪	fèngzhǎo	chicken feet	noun
味道	味道	wèidào	flavor, taste	
好吃	好吃	hǎochī	delicious	adjective
明天见	明天見	míngtiān jiàn	see you tomorrow	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

干杯! Gānbēi! Cheers!	明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.
你明天有空吗? Nǐ míngtiān yǒu kòng ma? Do you have free time tomorrow?	明天我们要去杭州。 Míngtiān wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu. Tomorrow, we are going to Hangzhou.
下周末谁去海边? xià zhōumò shéi qù hǎibiān ? Who is going to the beach next weekend?	我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qù le dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.
我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	明天我们要去杭州。 Míngtiān wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu. Tomorrow, we are going to Hangzhou.

我们要一起去参加聚会。 wǒmen yào yìqǐ qù cānjiā jùhuì . We want to go together to the party.	我们一起去吧. Wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba. Let's go together.
好啊,我们去吧。 Hǎo a, wǒmen qù ba. OK, let's go then.	明天我们在火车站见。 Míngtiān wǒmen zài huǒchēzhàn jiàn. Tomorrow we will meet at the train station.
这是我的电话号码。 Zhè shì wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ. This is my phone number.	我喜欢中国菜. Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguócài. I like Chinese food.
还好吧。 Hái hǎo ba. It's alright.	你能再说一遍吗? nǐ néng zài shuō yí biàn ma ? Could you say that again?
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.	我想吃薯片。 好吃。 "Wǒ xiǎng chī shǔpiàn . hǎochī ." I want to eat potato chips. Delicious.
她每天都吃很多蔬菜。 tā měi tiān dōu chī hěn duō shūcài . She eats a lot of vegetables every day.	要吃什么? Yào chī shénme? What do you want to eat?
好，我点吧。 Hǎo, wǒ diǎn ba. Okay, I'll order.	尝尝这个。 Chángcháng zhègè. Have a taste of this.
好的，再见! Hǎo de, zàijiàn. OK, goodbye!	我只要一个。 Wǒ zhǐ yào yí gè. I only want one.

你在说什么? Nǐ zài shuō shénme? What are you talking about?	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
你喜欢凤爪吗? Nǐ xǐhuān fèngzhǎo ma? Do you like chicken feet?	我不喜欢洋葱的味道。 Wǒ bù xǐhuān yángcōng de wèidào. I don't like the way onions taste.
巧克力蛋糕很好吃。 Qiǎokèlì dàngāo hěn hǎochī. Chocolate cake is pretty delicious.	这道菜很好吃! Zhè dào cài hěn hǎo chī. This dish is very delicious!
我们明天见。 Wǒmen míngtiān jiàn. We'll see each other tomorrow.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

干杯, *Gānbēi!* ("Cheers!")
This phrase is generally followed by a downing of a strong alcoholic beverage (typically 白酒, *báijiǔ*) 味道 (*wèidào*) can mean "taste" or "flavor."

怎么样, *Zěnmeyàng?* ("How is it?")
This phrase can be used on its own or following some subject the speaker is inquiring about.

还好, *hái hǎo* ("not bad, passable")
This phrase can be used when one wishes to give a slightly vague, non-committal answer to their opinion on something.

好的, 好啊 (*hǎo de, hǎo ā*)
Another couple of the many incarnations of 好 (*hǎo*), 好的(*hǎo de*), and 好啊 (*hǎo ā*) are similar to "all right" or "sure." Just a softer form of "good."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Socialize at a Chinese Business Dinner
迈克，尝尝这个。

Màikè, chángcháng zhègè.
"Mike, try this."

Reduplication of Verbs 尝 (一) 尝 / *cháng* (*yī*) c*háng*

Some times to soften the tone of a verb, the verb in Chinese will be reduplicated. In the dialogue, when Mike is invited to taste the dish we hear the following: 迈克，尝尝这个。 *Màikè, chángcháng zhègè.* ("Mike, try this.")

You will also sometimes hear the following, though the 一 (*yī*) is most often omitted.

For Example:

1. 尝一尝
   chángyìcháng
   "have a taste."

Reduplicating the verb simply softens the tone and makes it sound less like a demand. Other common verbs reduplicated are:

1. 看一看
   kàn (yí) kàn
   "have a look"

2. 走一走
   zǒu (yì) zǒu
   "take a walk"

"Do Something Again" - 再 (*zài* + verb)

To indicate an action that is to be repeated, use 再 (*zài* + verb).

For Example:

1. 再尝尝这个。
   Zài chángcháng zhègè.
   "Now taste this one."

Chinese Sentence Word Order (subject + 在 + place + verb)

我们在火车站见。
(*Wǒmen zài huǒchēzhàn jiàn.*)
"We'll meet at the train station."

The word order in a sentence that explains where an action will happen is as follows:

(subject + 在 + place + verb)

要 (*yào*) to Express "to be going to;" "to have to"

The verb 要 (*yào*) is used for many different functions. In this sentence from the dialogue:

我们要去杭州
Wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu
"We are going to go to Hangzhou."

The 要 (*yào*) here expresses intention. The meaning is "to be going to" or "to have to." Context is the only way to determine which meaning of 要 (*yào*) usage you are hearing.

Language Tip

明天见!
Míngtiān jiàn!
"See you tomorrow!"

In the above phrase, the time word can be swapped out and substituted with other times.

For Example:

1. 下个星期见!
   Xià gè xīngqī jiàn!
   "See you next week!"

2. 星期三见!
   Xīngqīsān jiàn!
   "See you Wednesday!"

3. 三点见!
   Sān diǎn jiàn!
   "See you at 3 o'clock!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Proposing a Toast

When someone proposes a toast at a Chinese dinner, it is customary to clink glasses with everyone at the table then down the entire drink in one go.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #17 Lost in Translation - Finding yourself in Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Grammar
9 Cultural Insight

17

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MR. MA: 喂，你好。
2. MIKE: 喂，早。我是迈克。
3. MR. MA: 迈克，你现在在哪儿?
4. MIKE: 我也不知道。
5. MR. MA: 我们看不见你。
6. MIKE: 我也看不见你们。你们在哪儿?
7. MR. MA: 我们在火车站。
8. MIKE: 我迷路了。
9. MR. MA: 呃，迈克，你的旁边是什么?
10. MIKE: 这儿有一个小卖部。
11. MR. MA: 哦，我知道。你等一会儿，我们过去。
12. MIKE: 谢谢。
13. MR. MA: 不客气。
14. (5 分钟后)
15. MR. MA: 嗨，迈克。我们走吧。
16. MIKE: 麻烦你们了。不好意思。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. MR. MA: 喂，你好。

2. MIKE: 喂，早。我是邁克。

3. MR. MA: 邁克，你現在在哪兒?

4. MIKE: 我也不知道。

5. MR. MA: 我們看不見你。

6. MIKE: 我也看不見你們。你們在哪兒?

7. MR. MA: 我們在火車站。

8. MIKE: 我迷路了。

9. MR. MA: 呃，邁克，你的旁邊是什麼?

10. MIKE: 這兒有一個小賣部。

11. MR. MA: 哦，我知道。你等一會兒兒，我們過去。

12. MIKE: 謝謝。

13. MR. MA: 不客氣。

14. (5分鐘後)

15. MR. MA: 嗨，邁克。我們走吧。

16. MIKE: 麻煩你們了。不好意思。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. MR. MA: Wéi, nǐhǎo.

2. MIKE: Wéi, zǎo. Wǒ shì Màikè.

3. MR. MA: Màikè, nǐ xiànzài zài nǎr?

4. MIKE: Wǒ yě bù zhīdào.

5. MR. MA: Wǒmen kànbújiàn nǐ.

6. MIKE: Wǒ yě kànbújiàn nǐmen. Nǐmen zài nǎr?

7. MR. MA: Wǒmen zài huǒchēzhàn.

8. MIKE: Wǒ mílù le.

9. MR. MA: E, Màikè, nǐ de pángbiān shì shénme?

10. MIKE: Zhèr yǒu yí gè xiǎomàibù.

11. MR. MA: O, wǒ zhīdào. Nǐ děng yí huìr, wǒmen guòqù.

12. MIKE: Xièxiè.

13. MR. MA: Bú kèqì.

14. (wǔ fēnzhōng hòu)

15. MR. MA: Hāi, Màikè. Wǒmen zǒu ba.

16. MIKE: Máfán nǐmen le. Bùhǎoyìsi.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. MR. MA: Hello.

2. MIKE: Hello, good morning. This is Mike.

3. MR. MA: Mike, where are you now?

4. MIKE: I don't really know either.

5. MR. MA: We can't see you.

6. MIKE: I can't see you either. Where are you?

7. MR. MA: We're at the train station.

8. MIKE: I'm lost.

9. MR. MA: Ah, Mike. What is around you?

10. MIKE: There is a small shop here.

11. MR. MA: Oh, I know. Wait a moment, we'll come over.

12. MIKE: Thanks.

13. MR. MA: You're welcome.

14. (5 minutes later)

15. MR. MA: Hey, Mike. Let's go.

16. MIKE: Sorry to have hassled you guys.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
哪儿	哪兒	nǎr	where	question pronoun
一会儿	一會兒	yíhuìr	a while	adverb
等	等	děng	to wait	verb
过去	過去	guòqù	to go over, to cross over	verb
小卖部	小賣部	xiǎomàibù	small shop	noun
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here	pronoun
迷路	迷路	mílù	to get lost	adjective
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know, know	verb
也	也	yě	also, too	adverb
不客气	不客氣	bú kèqì	you're welcome	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

您住在哪儿? Nín zhù zài nǎr? Where are you staying?	我等一会儿再去。 Wǒ děng yí huìr zài qù. I will go in a little while.
你能再等两天吗? 收据我很快就会准备好的。 nǐ néng zài děng liǎng tiān ma ? shōujù wǒ hěn kuài jiù huì zhǔnbèi hǎo de . Can you wait for your invoice a couple of days more? I have it almost ready.	我不喜欢等。 wǒ bù xǐhuān děng . I don't like waiting.
你每次都让我等好几个小时! nǐ měicì dōu ràng wǒ děng hǎojǐ ge xiǎoshí ! Every time you made me wait for hours!	你等我一下。 Nǐ děng wǒ yíxià. Wait for me a moment.

你等一会儿，我们过去。 Nǐ děng yí huìr, wǒmen guòqù. Wait a while, we're going over there.	这儿有一个小卖部。 Zhèr yǒu yí gè xiǎomàibù. There is a small shop here.
我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.	你知道她的名字吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā de míngzì ma? Do you know her name?
也许我们永远不会知道这个习惯是来源于哪里。 yěxǔ wǒmen yǒngyuǎn búhuì zhīdào zhège xíguàn shì láiyuán yú nǎlǐ . We will probably never know the origins of this habit.	我知道问题的答案。 Wǒ zhīdào wèntí de dáàn . I know the answer to the question.
你知道他是谁吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?	咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.
他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Find People in Chinese

呃，迈克，你的旁边是什么？

"Ah, Mike. What is around you?"

Resultative Verbs – 看不见 (*kànbújiàn*)

Resultative verbs are basically just a compound verb made up of an action verb plus a resultative ending. In today's dialogue we see the resultative verb 看不见, *kànbújiàn* ("to be unable to see something").

This verb compound is expressing that a person is looking but not able to see Mike. Let's look

at what makes up this compound verb:

看, *kàn* ("to look")
不, *bú* ("not")
见, *jiàn* ("to perceive")

So you can use this verb compound whenever you are trying to see someone or something but are unable to achieve the full result of the action.

If you could see him, you could then turn it around and say 看得见, *kàndejiàn* ("to be able to see something").

"Here" / "There" / "Where" (这儿 / 那儿 / 哪儿)

Just as the word for "where" has two forms in Chinese, 哪儿 (*nǎr*) and 哪里 (*nǎlǐ*), the words for "here" and "there" do as well.

For Example:

1. 这儿
   zhèr
   "here"

2. 这里
   zhèlǐ
   "here"

3. 那儿
   nàr
   "there"

4. 那里
   nàlǐ
   "there"

有 (*yǒu*) to Express Existence

有 (*yǒu*) indicates existence when the subject is a location. Similar to "there is" or "there are" in English.

For Example:

1. 这儿有一个小卖部。
   Zhèr yǒu yí gè xiǎomàibù.
   "There is a small shop here."

2. 哪里有出租车?
   Nǎlǐ yǒu chūzūchē?
   "Where are there taxis?"

"Go Over"/"Come Over" (过去 /过来)

---

1. 过去
   guòqù
   "to go over (someplace away from the person)."

2. 过来
   guòlái
   "to come over (somewhere near to the person)."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A Full Itinerary for Your Visit

The Chinese are known for their hospitality. Often when a visitor comes, the Chinese will tour them around and make all arrangements for the guest's entertainment. Outings are often quite structured with an itinerary of items to be seen and done and eaten as part of the experience. Suffice it to say, you won't have to worry about a thing.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #18 The Beauty of the Orient—Pretty Girls and Handsome Boys

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
10 Cultural Insight

18

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 哇，那个女孩真漂亮。
2. MR. MA: 哈哈，迈克，你喜欢漂亮的女孩！！
3. MIKE: 中国的女人都很漂亮。
4. MR. MA: 你有女朋友吗?
5. MIKE: 呃……，没有。
6. MANAGER WANG: 我们帮帮你，怎么样?
7. MR. MA: 对。
8. MIKE: 不用，不用。
9. MR. MA: 我有一个很漂亮的同事。
10. MANAGER WANG: 而且你很帅，迈克。
11. MIKE: 不用不用。
12. MANAGER WANG: 中国的女人一定喜欢你。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 哇，那個女孩真漂亮。

CONT'D OVER

2. MR. MA: 哈哈，邁克，你喜歡漂亮的女孩！！

3. MIKE: 中國的女人都很漂亮。

4. MR. MA: 你有女朋友嗎?

5. MIKE: 呃……，沒有。

6. MANAGER WANG: 我們幫幫你，怎麼樣?

7. MR. MA: 對。

8. MIKE: 不用，不用。

9. MR. MA: 我有一個很漂亮的同事。

10. MANAGER WANG: 而且你很帥，邁克。

11. MIKE: 不用不用。

12. MANAGER WANG: 中國的女人一定喜歡你。

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Wa, nàgè nǚhái zhēn piàoliàng.

2. MR. MA: Hāhā, Màikè, nǐ xǐhuān piàoliàng de nǚhái! !

CONT'D OVER

3. MIKE: Zhōngguó de nǚrén dōu hěn piàoliàng.

4. MR. MA: Nǐ yǒu nǚpéngyǒu ma?

5. MIKE: E.... méiyǒu.

6. MANAGER WANG: Wǒmen bāngbāng nǐ, zěnmeyàng?

7. MR. MA: Duì.

8. MIKE: Búyòng, búyòng.

9. MR. MA: Wǒ yǒu yí gè hěn piàoliàng de tóngshì.

10. MANAGER WANG: Erqiě nǐ hěn shuài, Màikè.

11. MIKE: Búyòng, búyòng.

12. MANAGER WANG: Zhōngguó de nǚrén yídìng xǐhuān nǐ.

ENGLISH

1. MIKE: Wow, that girl is really beautiful.

2. MR. MA: Haha, Mike, you like pretty girls!

3. MIKE: Chinese girls are all very beautiful.

CONT'D OVER

4. MR. MA: Do you have a girlfriend?

5. MIKE: Uh...no.

6. MANAGER WANG: We'll help you, what do you say?

7. MR. MA: Yes.

8. MIKE: No, no.

9. MR. MA: I have a very beautiful co-worker.

10. MANAGER WANG: Plus you are very handsome, Mike.

11. MIKE: No, no.

12. MANAGER WANG: Chinese girls will definitely like you.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
一定	一定	yídìng	definitely, certainly
个	個	gè	measure word
那	那	nà	that
哇	哇	wa	wow
漂亮	漂亮	piàoliàng	beautiful, pretty
对	對	duì	correct

怎么样	怎麼樣	zěnmeyàng	how is it
用	用	yòng	to use
而且	而且	érqiě	furthermore, plus
帮	幫	bāng	to help
女朋友	女朋友	nǚpéngyǒu	girlfriend
都	都	dōu	all
帅	帥	shuài	handsome
同事	同事	tóngshì	co-worker
女人	女人	nǚrén	woman
女孩	女孩	nǚhái	girl

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我一定会去。 Wǒ yídìng huì qù. I will definitely go.	我只要一个。 Wǒ zhǐ yào yí gè. I only want one.
那是什么? Nà shì shénme? What is that?	哇，好多事情啊。 Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a. Wow, so many things!
很漂亮! Hěn piàoliàng! Very pretty!	对，我是美国人。 Duì, wǒ shì Měiguórén. Yes, I am American.
这部电影怎么样? Zhè bù diànyǐng zěnmeyàng? How is this movie?	你要用这个方法。 Nǐ yào yòng zhè gè fāngfǎ. You need to use this method.

而且你很帅。 Erqiě nǐ hěn shuài. Plus, you are very handsome.	你可以帮我做吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ zuò ma? Can you help me do it?
这是我的女朋友. Zhè shì wǒ de nǚpéngyǒu. This is my girlfriend.	我们都喜欢秋天。 Wǒ men dōu xǐhuān qiūtiān. We all like autumn.
我们都喜欢他. Wǒmen dōu xǐhuān tā. We all like him.	你哥哥很帅。 Nǐ gēge hěn shuài. Your older brother is very handsome.
这是我的同事，李梅. Zhè shì wǒ de tóngshì, Lǐméi. This is my co-worker, Li Mei.	一个女人正在喝咖啡。 Yígè nǚrén zhèngzài hē kāfēi. A woman is drinking a cup of coffee.
那个女人是个科学家。 Nà gè nǚrén shì gè kēxuéjiā. That woman is a scientist.	那个女孩很漂亮。 Nàgè nǚhái hěn piàoliàng. That girl is very pretty.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

女孩 / 女孩儿, *nǚhái / nǚháir* ("girl")
Some speakers of Chinese will add the 儿 (*er*) sound to the end of this word. Both ways of pronouncing it are acceptable/correct.

女人, *nǚrén* ("woman")

女朋友, *nǚpéngyǒu*("girlfriend")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Talk about Appearance and the Opposite Sex
中国的女人都很漂亮。

"Chinese girls are all very beautiful."

Modifying Nouns (的)

The particle 的 (*de*) is used to modify nouns. The noun comes at the end of the noun phrase and is immediately preceded by 的. The words that modify the noun come right before 的.

For Example:

1. 漂亮的女孩
   piàoliàng de nǚhái
   "beautiful girl"

2. 漂亮的同事
   piàoliàng de tóngshì
   "beautiful co-worker"

3. 帅的同事
   shuài de tóngshì
   "handsome co-worker"

One syllable adjectives can attach to nouns directly -- the 的 (*de*) can be omitted.

For Example:

1. 帅的同事
   shuài de tóngshì
   "handsome co-worker"

Reduplication of Verbs 帮帮 (*bāngbang*)

Sometimes to soften the tone of a verb, the verb in Chinese will be reduplicated. In the dialogue when Mike is invited to taste the dish, we hear the following:

Mgr Wang: 我们帮帮你。

Wǒmen bāngbāng nǐ.
"We'll help you out."

You will also sometimes hear the following, though the 一 (*yi*) is most often omitted).

For Example:

1. 尝一尝
   chángyìcháng
   "have a taste"

Reduplicating the verb simply softens the tone, and makes it sound less like a demand. Other common verbs reduplicated are:

1. 看一看
   kàn (*yí*) *kan*
   "have a look"

2. 走一走
   zǒu (*yì*) *zǒu*
   "take a walk"

"All" (都, *dōu*)

都 (*dōu*) is used for "both" and "all." Context will indicate the meaning. 都 (*dōu*) comes before the verb or adjective phrase. In the dialogue we heard:

1. 中国的女人都很漂亮。
   Zhōngguó de nǚrén dōu hěn piàoliàng.
   "Chinese girls are all very beautiful."

Another Example:

1. 他的电影都很有意思。
   Tā de diànyǐng dōu hěn yǒuyìsi.
   "His films are all very interesting."

Negation of 有 (*yǒu*)

As we know, in Chinese the answer to a question repeats the verb from the question. In our dialogue, the question used the verb 有 (*yǒu*). The negation of **有** (*yǒu*) is always 没有 (*méiyǒu*).

Mr. Ma: 你有女朋友吗?
Nǐ yǒu nǚpéngyǒu ma?
"Do you have a girlfriend?"

Mike: 呃.....，没有。
E ....., méiyǒu.
"Uh... no."

So when expressing that you "don't have" anything, you always use 没有 (*méiyǒu*); you cannot say 不有 (*bù yǒu*).

For Example:

1. 我没有时间。
   Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.
   "I don't have time."

2. 我没有手机。
   Wǒ méiyǒu shǒujī.
   "I don't have a mobile phone."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Setting People Up / Making Introductions

Many marriages in China are still made by the aid of a matchmaker. There are professional matchmakers but nowadays a lot of people will get set up by friends, colleagues, or family members. Even some parks are gathering places for parents to find potential mates for their grown sons and daughters. Some parents even go so far as to make up a placard with their child's stats and parade it around for interested parties to "inquire within."

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #19 Three Places You Have to See When in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
8 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
8 Grammar

19

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 太谢谢了。
2. MR. MA: 迈克，这个星期你有什么计划?
3. MIKE: 我也不知道。我有三天时间。第一天我想去外滩。
4. MR. MA: 外滩？太棒了！顺便去博物馆看看吧。
5. MIKE: 好。
6. MR. MA: 对了，你一定要去玉器市场看看。
7. MIKE: 远吗?
8. MR. MA: 不远。在那儿你可以买很多礼物。
9. MIKE: 哦，好啊。请帮我写一下那个地方的名字,好吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 太謝謝了。
2. MR. MA: 邁克，這個星期你有甚麼計劃?
3. MIKE: 我也不知道。我有三天時間。第一天我想去外灘。
4. MR. MA: 外灘？太棒了！順便去博物館看看吧。
5. MIKE: 好。

CONT'D OVER

6. MR. MA: 對了，你一定要去玉器市場看看。

7. MIKE: 遠嗎?

8. MR. MA: 不遠。在那兒你可以買很多禮物。

9. MIKE: 哦，好啊。請幫我寫一下那個地方的名字,好嗎?

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Tài xièxiè le.

2. MR. MA: Màikè, zhè gè xīngqī nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà?

3. MIKE: Wǒ yě bù zhīdào. Wǒ yǒu sān tiān shíjiān. Dì yī tiān wǒ xiǎng qù wàitān.

4. MR. MA: Wàitān? Tài bàng le! Shùnbiàn qù bówùguǎn kànkan ba.

5. MIKE: Hǎo.

6. MR. MA: Duì le, nǐ yídìng yào qù yùqì shìchǎng kànkan.

7. MIKE: Yuǎn ma?

8. MR. MA: Bù yuǎn. Zài nàr nǐ kěyǐ mǎi hěn duō lǐwù.

9. MIKE: O, hǎo ā. Qǐng bāng wǒ xiě yíxià nàgè dìfāng de míngzì, hǎo ma?

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. MIKE: Thank you so much.

2. MR. MA: Mike, what are your plans this week?

3. MIKE: I don't really know. I have three days. The first day I would like to go to the Bund.

4. MR. MA: The Bund? Awesome! On the way you should go look around the museum.

5. MIKE: OK.

6. MR. MA: Oh, you definitely need to go to have a look at the jade market.

7. MIKE: Is it far?

8. MR. MA: No, it's not. You can buy a lot of gifts there.

9. MIKE: Oh, all right. Could you write down the name of that place for me?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
看看	看看	kànkan	to take a look	verb
玉器市场	玉器市場	yùqì shìchǎng	jade market	noun
远	遠	yuǎn	far	adjective
在	在	zài	at	
那儿	那兒	nàr	there	pronoun
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can	verb
买	買	mǎi	to buy	verb
多	多	duō	many, much	adjective

礼物	礼物	lǐwù	gift, present	noun
帮	帮	bāng	to help	verb
写	寫	xiě	to write	verb
地方	地方	dìfāng	place	noun
一定	一定	yídìng	definitely, certainly	adverb
太	太	tài	too	adverb
星期	星期	xīngqī	week	time word
博物馆	博物館	bówùguǎn	musuem	noun
外滩	外灘	wàitān	the Bund	noun
顺便	順便	shùnbiàn	on the way, while one is at it	adverb
想	想	xiǎng	would like, to want,love to	verb, phrase
去	去	qù	to go	verb
时间	時間	shíjiān	time	noun
天	天	tiān	day	noun
不知道	不知道	bù zhīdào	to not know	verb
也	也	yě	also, too	adverb
计划	計劃	jìhuà	plan	noun
什么	甚麼	shénme	what	question pronoun
名字	名字	míngzì	name	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

来看看我们这边的衣服。 Lái kànkan wǒmen zhèbiān de yīfu. Come have a look at our clothing here.	去玉器市场好玩儿。 Qù yùqì shìchǎng hǎowánr. It's fun to go to the jade market.

我看不见，太远了。 wǒ kànbùjiàn , tài yuǎn le . I can't see it, it's too far away.	我家离这里很远。 Wǒ jiā lí zhèlǐ hěn yuǎn. My house is very far from here.
他在后面。 Tā zài hòumiàn. He is in the back.	他在那儿。 Tā zài nàr. He is over there.
可以用信用卡吗? Kěyǐ yòng xìnyòngkǎ ma? Can I use a credit card?	便宜一点儿，可以吗? Piányì yìdiǎnr, kěyǐ ma? Can (you) make it a little cheaper?
你可以帮我吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ ma? Can you help me?	我要买那本书。 Wǒ yào mǎi nà běn shū. I want to buy that book.
今天我们有很多工作要做。 Jīntiān wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò. We have a lot of work to do today.	谢谢你的礼物。 Xièxiè nǐde lǐwù. Thanks for your gift.
你可以帮我吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ ma? Can you help me?	你写字很漂亮。 Nǐ xiězì hěn piàoliàng. You write so beautifully.
那个地方怎么样? Nà gè dìfāng zěnmeyàng ? What is that place like?	我一定会去。 Wǒ yídìng huì qù. I will definitely go.
他这周末的家庭作业太多了。 tā zhè zhōumò de jiātíngzuòyè tài duō le . He has too much homework for this weekend.	夏天太热了。 Xiàtiān tài rè le. The summer is too hot.
这个星期你有什么计划? Zhè gè xīngqī nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà? What plans do you have this week?	博物馆很无聊. Bówùguǎn hěn wúliáo. The museum is boring.

外滩很漂亮. Wàitān hěn piàoliàng. The Bund is really beautiful.	顺便去博物馆看看吧。 Shùnbiàn qù bówùguǎn kànkan ba. On the way you should go look around the museum.
我很想去但是太贵了。 wǒ hěn xiǎng qù dànshì tài guì le . I would love to go but it is too expensive.	我想去看看。 Wǒ xiǎng qù kànkan. I want to have a look.
下周末谁去海边? xià zhōumò shéi qù hǎibiān ? Who is going to the beach next weekend?	我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qù le dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.
我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	你早上几点起床? Nǐ zǎoshàng jǐdiǎn qǐchuáng? What time do you get up in the morning?
时间到了。 Shíjiān dào le. Time is up.	他浪费了所有的时间。 Tā làngfèi le suǒyǒu de shíjiān. He wasted all of the time.
你的生日是哪天? Nǐ de shēngrì shì nǎ tiān? Which day is your birthday?	一天比一天好. Yì tiān bǐ yì tiān hǎo. Each day gets better and better.
我不知道这个地方的名字。 Wǒ bù zhīdào zhè gè dìfāng de míngzì. I don't know the name of this place.	咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.
他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.	你有什么计划? Nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà? What are your plans?
你在说什么? Nǐ zài shuō shénme? What are you talking about?	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?

你叫什么名字? nǐ jiào shénme míngzi? What's your name?	我忘记他的名字。 Wǒ wàngjì tāde míngzì. I forget his name.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

太 谢谢 了 (tài xièxiè le) thanks so much

这个星期 (zhègè xīngqī) this week

下个星期 (xiàgè xīngqī) next week

远 (yuǎn) far

近 (jìn) near

GRAMMAR

To talk about numbers in sequence in Chinese, i.e. to make a number ordinal, you simply add the word 第 (dì) in front of the number, i.e.

第一天
(dì yī tiān)
"the first day"

More examples:

第一
(dì yī)
"first"

第二
dì èr
"second"

第十
(dì shí)
"tenth"

Adding Emphasis / 太...了 (tài ...le)

You can emphasize an adjective using the 太...了 (tài...le) pattern. In this lesson's dialogue we heard:

太棒了!
(Tài bàng le!)
"So awesome!"

Other common phrases that use the 太...了 (tài...le) pattern:

太好了
(tài hǎo le)
"so great"

太差了
(tài chà le)
"so terrible"

"Must + verb" / 一定要 + verb (yīdìng yào + verb)

The word for 'definitely', or 'certainly', in Chinese is 一定 (yídìng). This sentence pattern is used to convey certainty, that one 'must' do something.

一定要 + verb
(yídìng yào + verb)

There is an example of this sentence pattern in this lesson:

你一定要去玉器市场看看。
(Nǐ yídìng yào qù yùqì shìchǎng kànkan.)
"you have to go to the jade market and have a look around."

Another example:

你一定要做!
(Nǐ yídìng yào zuò!)
"You have to do it!)

"Would Like" / 想 (xiǎng)

The verb 想 (xiǎng) can have different meanings in different contexts. In this lesson it is a modal verb; it expresses desire to do something--in this case to go to the Bund. When used in this fashion as a modal verb, 想 (xiǎng) is followed by a verb, as it is in our dialogue:

我想去外滩。
(Wǒ xiǎng qù wàitān.)
"I would like to go to the Bund."

Another example:

你想看电影吗？
(Nǐ xiǎng kàn diànyǐng ma?)
"Would you like to see a movie?"

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #20 You'd Better Ask Before you Do This in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar

20

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 请问，博物馆几点开门?
2. STAFF: 上午十点。
3. MIKE: 现在几点了?
4. STAFF: 九点五十。
5. MIKE: 好吧，我在这儿等。
6. (十分钟后)
7. STAFF: 先生，您要几张票?
8. MIKE: 一张。
9. STAFF: 20块钱。
10. MIKE: 给你。
11. (在博物馆)
12. MIKE: 不好意思，我可以在这里拍照吗?
13. SECURITY: 对不起。这里不可以拍照。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 請問，博物館幾點開門?

CONT'D OVER

2. STAFF: 上午十點。

3. MIKE: 現在幾點了?

4. STAFF: 九點五十。

5. MIKE: 好吧，我在這兒等。

6. (十分鐘後)

7. STAFF: 先生，您要幾張票?

8. MIKE: 一張。

9. STAFF: 20塊錢。

10. MIKE: 給你。

11. (在博物館)

12. MIKE: 不好意思，我可以在這裡拍照嗎?

13. SECURITY: 對不起。這裡不可以拍照。

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Qǐng wèn, bówùguǎn jǐ diǎn kāimén?

2. STAFF: Shàngwǔ shí diǎn.

3. MIKE: Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?

CONT'D OVER

4. STAFF: Jiǔ diǎn wǔshí.

5. MIKE: Hǎoba, wǒ zài zhèr děng.

6. (shí fēnzhōng hòu)

7. STAFF: Xiānshēng, nín yào jǐ zhāng piào?

8. MIKE: Yì zhāng.

9. STAFF: Èrshí kuài qián.

10. MIKE: Gěi nǐ.

11. (zài bówùguǎn)

12. MIKE: Bùhǎoyìsi, wǒ kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ pāizhào ma?

13. SECURITY: Duìbùqǐ. Zhèlǐ bù kěyǐ pāizhào.

ENGLISH

1. MIKE: Excuse me, what time does the museum open?

2. STAFF: 10 A.M.

3. MIKE: What time is it now?

4. STAFF: nine fifty.

5. MIKE: All right, I'll wait here.

CONT'D OVER

6. (10 minutes later)

7. STAFF: Sir, how many tickets do you want?

8. MIKE: One ticket.

9. STAFF: 20 RMB.

10. MIKE: Here you are.

11. (In the museum)

12. MIKE: Excuse me, can I take a photo here?

13. SECURITY: Sorry, you can't take photos here.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
请问	請問	qǐng wèn	may i ask	phrase
拍照	拍照	pāizhào	to take a photograph	verb
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can	verb
不好意思	不好意思	bùhǎoyìsi	sorry	phrase
这里	這裡	zhèlǐ	here	pronoun
张	張	zhāng	measure word for flat objects	measure word
后	后	hòu	after	preposition
分	分	fēn	minute	measure word
等	等	děng	to wait	verb
这儿	這兒	zhèr	here	pronoun

好吧	好吧	hǎoba	all right	phrase
几点	幾點	jǐ diǎn	what time	question word
几	幾	jǐ	how many (under ten), a few	question word
现在	現在	xiànzài	now	adverb
博物馆	博物館	bówùguǎn	museum	noun
对不起	對不起	duìbùqǐ	I'm sorry	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请问，你是李先生吗? Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì Lǐ xiānshēng ma? Excuse me, are you Mr. Li?	我可以在这里拍照吗? Wǒ kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ pāizhào ma? Can I take a photo here?
你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.	不好意思,我说错了. Bùhǎoyìsi, wǒ shuō cuò le. Sorry, I said it wrong.
我在这里。 Wǒ zài zhèlǐ. I'm over here.	给我一张纸。 Gěi wǒ yì zhāng zhǐ. Give me a piece of paper.
你在我的后面. Nǐ zài wǒde hòumian. You are behind me.	等我一分钟。 Děng wǒ yì fēnzhōng. Wait for me for one minute.
你能再等两天吗? 收据我很快就会准备好的。 nǐ néng zài děng liǎng tiān ma ? shōujù wǒ hěn kuài jiù huì zhǔnbèi hǎo de . Can you wait for your invoice a couple of days more? I have it almost ready.	我不喜欢等。 wǒ bù xǐhuān děng . I don't like waiting.

你每次都让我等好几个小时! nǐ měicì dōu ràng wǒ děng hǎojǐ ge xiǎoshí ! Every time you made me wait for hours!	你等我一下。 Nǐ děng wǒ yíxià. Wait for me a moment.
我住在这儿。 Wǒ zhù zài zhèr. I live here.	好吧,听你的。 Hǎoba, tīng nǐ de. All right, have it your way.
几点钟? Jǐ diǎn zhōng? What time is it?	你有几个? Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè? How many do you have?
现在几点钟? Xiànzài jǐ diǎnzhōng? What time is it now?	历史博物馆有新的展览。 lìshǐ bówùguǎn yǒu xīn de zhǎnlǎn . The history museum has a new exhibit.
请问，博物馆几点开门? Qǐng wèn, bówùguǎn jǐ diǎn kāi mén? Excuse me, what time does the museum open?	对不起,我很忙。 Duìbùqǐ, wǒ hěn máng. Sorry, I'm very busy.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

几点, *jǐ diǎn* ("what time ")

开门, *kāimén* ("to open (door)")

拍照, *pāizhào* ("to take a photo")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This lesson is Time in Chinese.

现在几点了?
Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?
"What time is it now?"

Telling the Time in Chinese

The following are some words used in Chinese to tell the time.

For Example:

1. 几点(钟)?
   (*jǐ diǎn* (*zhōng*)?
   "What time is it?"

2. 分
   fēn
   "minute"

3. 刻
   kè
   "quarter"

4. 半
   bàn
   "half"

5. 半夜
   bànyè
   "midnight"

6. 中午
   zhōngwǔ
   "noon"

Some examples used in this lesson:

1. 九点五十
   jiǔ diǎn wǔshí
   "9:50"

2. 十二点二十三
   shíèr diǎn èrshí sān
   "12:23"

3. 两点一刻
   liǎng diǎn yí kè
   "a quarter past two"

4. 五点半
   wǔ diǎn bàn
   "half past five"

5. 十二点零五
   shíèr diǎn líng wǔ
   "12:05"

If you wish to specify morning, afternoon, or evening, you simply add the appropriate term before the time.

For Example:

1. 上午十点
   shàngwǔ shí diǎn
   "10 o'clock in the morning"

2. 下午三点半
   xiàwǔ sān diǎn bàn
   "3:30 in the afternoon"

3. 晚上七点
   wǎnshàng qī diǎn
   "7 o'clock in the evening"

Asking Permission / 可以 (*kěyǐ*)

可以 (*kěyǐ*) is an auxilliary verb that means "can" or "may," and is often used to express permission to perform an action. In the dialogue we hear an example of this usage of 可以 (*kěyǐ*):

1. 我可以在这里拍照吗?
   Wǒ kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ pāi zhào ma?
   "Can I take a photo here?"

The appropriate answer either giving or denying permission would be as follows:

1. 可以
   kěyǐ
   "Yes, you can."

2. 不可以
   bù kěyǐ
   "No, you can't."

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #21 Getting the Best Table and Dish in Town

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar

#21

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. WAITRESS: 欢迎光临，您几位?
2. MIKE: 一位。
3. WAITRESS: 请这边走。请坐。
4. WAITRESS: 你想吃什么?
5. MIKE: 你推荐一下吧。
6. WAITRESS: 宫爆鸡丁怎么样?
7. MIKE: 好的。那个菜是什么? (points to what another customer is eating)
8. WAITRESS: 那个是水煮牛肉。
9. MIKE: 我也要那个。
10. WAITRESS: 好的。还要什么?
11. MIKE: 一碗米饭。
12. WAITRESS: 好的，请稍等。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. WAITRESS: 歡迎光臨，您幾位?
2. MIKE: 一位。

CONT'D OVER

3. WAITRESS: 請這邊走。請坐。

4. WAITRESS: 你想吃什麼?

5. MIKE: 你推薦一下吧。

6. WAITRESS: 宮爆雞丁怎麼樣?

7. MIKE: 好的。那個菜是什麼? (points to what another customer is eating)

8. WAITRESS: 那個是水煮牛肉。

9. MIKE: 我也要那個。

10. WAITRESS: 好的。還要什麼?

11. MIKE: 一碗米飯。

12. WAITRESS: 好的，請稍等。

PINYIN

1. WAITRESS: Huānyíngguānglín, nín jǐ wèi?

2. MIKE: Yí wèi.

3. WAITRESS: Qǐng zhèbiān zǒu. Qǐngzuò.

4. WAITRESS: Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme?

CONT'D OVER

5. MIKE: Nǐ tuījiàn yíxià ba.

6. WAITRESS: Gōngbào jīdīng zěnmeyàng ?

7. MIKE: Hǎo de. Nàgè cài shì shénme? (points to what another customer is eating)

8. WAITRESS: Nàgè shì shuǐzhǔ niúròu.

9. MIKE: Wǒ yě yào nàgè.

10. WAITRESS: Hǎo de. Háiyào shénme?

11. MIKE: Yì wǎn mǐfàn.

12. WAITRESS: Hǎo de. Qǐng shāoděng.

ENGLISH

1. WAITRESS: Welcome. How many are you?

2. MIKE: One.

3. WAITRESS: This way, please. Please have a seat.

4. WAITRESS: What would you like to eat?

5. MIKE: Is there something you can recommend?

6. WAITRESS: How about Kungpao chicken?

CONT'D OVER

7. MIKE: Sure. What dish is that? (points at what another customer is eating)

8. WAITRESS: That is stewed spicy beef.

9. MIKE: I want that too.

10. WAITRESS: OK. Anything else?

11. MIKE: One bowl of rice.

12. WAITRESS: OK. Please wait a moment.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
米饭	米飯	mǐfàn	rice
水煮牛肉	水煮牛肉	shuǐ zhǔ niúròu	stewed spicy beef in oil
菜	菜	cài	dish (food)
宫爆鸡丁	宮爆雞丁	gōngbào jīdīng	kungpao chicken
推荐	推薦	tuījiàn	to recommend
想	想	xiǎng	would like, to want
坐	坐	zuò	to sit
走	走	zǒu	walk
这边	這邊	zhèbiān	here, around here
几	幾	jǐ	how many (under ten), a few
欢迎光临	歡迎光臨	huānyíng guānglín	welcome

还有	還有	háiyǒu	in addition, still
碗	碗	wǎn	bowl
也	也	yě	also, too

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我要一碗米饭。 Wǒ yào yì wǎn mǐfàn. I want one bowl of rice.	中国菜很好吃。 Zhōngguó cài hěn hǎochī. Chinese food is delicious.
宫爆鸡丁很好吃。 Gōng bào jīdīng hěn hǎochī. Kungpao chicken is delicious.	你推荐一下吧。 Nǐ tuījiàn yíxià ba. Is there something you can recommend?
我想去看看。 Wǒ xiǎng qù kànkan. I want to have a look.	请坐。 Qǐng zuò. Please sit.
我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.	请这边走。 Qǐng zhèbiān zǒu. Please walk this way.
你有几个? Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè? How many do you have?	欢迎光临，请问您几位? Huānyíng guānglín, qǐngwèn nín jǐwèi? Welcome honored guest, how many of there are you?
这儿还有位子吗? Zhèr hái yǒu wèizi ma? Are there still any places there?	我要一碗米饭。 Wǒ yào yì wǎn mǐfàn. I want one bowl of rice.

咖啡也好。 Kāfēi yě hǎo. Coffee is good too.	他也是澳大利亚人。 Tā yě shì Àodàlìyà rén. He is also Australian.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

推荐, *tuījiàn* ("to recommend")

宫爆鸡丁, *gōng bào jīdīng* ("Kungpao chicken")

鸡肉, *jīròu* ("chicken")

水煮牛肉, *shuǐ zhǔ niúròu* ("stewed spicy beef in oil")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Order in a Restaurant in Chinese

您几位？

Nǐn jǐ wèi?

"How many of you are there?"

This phrase is commonly asked of restaurant patrons upon entering a restaurant in China, just as it was used in the dialogue today, upon which the patron will advise the waiter of how many there are in their party.

For Example:

Waiter: 您几位？

Nǐn jǐ wèi?

"How many of you are there?"

Patron: 一位。

Yí wèi.

"One."

位 (*wèi*) is the measure word for people when you wish to show extra respect or

professionalism. It is not necessary to use the full word for "people" in this context. The measure word already infers this to the listener.

"How many" - 几 (*jǐ*) / 多少 (*duōshǎo*)

There are two question words for "how many" or "how much" in Chinese. It depends on the quantities you are asking about.

For Example:

1. 几
   jǐ
   "how many/how much" - for amounts less than ten.

2. 多少
   duōshǎo
   "how many/how much" - for higher amounts, usually ten or more.

还要 (*háiyào*)

还要 (*háiyào*) literally translated means, "still to want." When used in combination with the word "what" (什么, *shénme*) in Chinese, it basically has the meaning of "What else do you want?"

For Example:

1. 还要什么?
   Háiyào shénme?
   "What else do you want?" (Or, literally, "Still to want what?")

Language Expansion

When you are finished with your meal, you will need to ask for your check as the waiter will generally not bring it until requested to do so. The way to ask for your check in Chinese is to use the phrase 买单, *mǎidān* ("check please").

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #22 You Paid What? The Best Place to Shop in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Grammar
7 Cultural Insight

#22

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. STALL 1: 你好，先生。
2. STALL 2: 好吃啊!
3. MIKE: 这个是什么?
4. STALL 2: 这是煎包。
5. MIKE: 什么馅儿的?
6. STALL 2: 猪肉。
7. MIKE: 多少钱?
8. STALL 2: 五个三块。
9. MIKE: 那个呢? 那个是什么?
10. STALL 1: 这是羊肉串儿，一个两块。
11. MIKE: 好的，给我三个煎包和两个羊肉串儿。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. STALL 1: 你好，先生。
2. STALL 2: 好吃啊!
3. MIKE: 這個是什麼?

CONT'D OVER

4. STALL 2: 這是煎包。

5. MIKE: 甚麼餡兒的?

6. STALL 2: 豬肉。

7. MIKE: 多少錢?

8. STALL 2: 五個三塊。

9. MIKE: 那個呢? 那個是什麼?

10. STALL 1: 這是羊肉串兒，一個兩块。

11. MIKE: 好的，給我三個煎包和兩個羊肉串兒。

PINYIN

1. STALL 1: Nǐhǎo, xiānshēng.

2. STALL 2: Hǎochī a!

3. MIKE: Zhè gè shì shénme?

4. STALL 2: Zhè shì jiānbāo.

5. MIKE: Shénme xiànr de?

6. STALL 2: Zhūròu.

7. MIKE: Duōshǎo qián ?

CONT'D OVER

8. STALL 2: Wǔ gè sān kuài.

9. MIKE: Nàgè ne? Nàgè shì shénme?

10. STALL 1: Zhè shì yángròuchuànr, yí gè liǎng kuài.

11. MIKE: Hǎo de, gěi wǒ sān gè jiān bāo hé liǎng gè yángròuchuànr.

ENGLISH

1. STALL 1: Hello, Sir.

2. STALL 2: Delicious!

3. MIKE: What is this?

4. STALL 2: These are fried buns.

5. MIKE: What filling?

6. STALL 2: Pork.

7. MIKE: How much do they cost?

8. STALL 2: Five for 3 RMB.

9. MIKE: What about that? What is that?

10. STALL 1: These are lamb kebabs. It's 2 RMB for one.

CONT'D OVER

11. MIKE: Okay, give me three fried buns and two lamb kebabs.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
羊肉串儿	羊肉串兒	yángròu chuànr	lamb kebab
呢	呢	ne	(follow-up question particle)
猪肉	猪肉	zhūròu	pork
馅儿	餡兒	xiànr	filling
多少	多少	duōshǎo	how much, how many
煎包	煎包	jiānbāo	fried stuffed bun
好吃	好吃	hǎochī	delicious

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他做的羊肉串儿很好吃。 Tā zuò de yángròuchuànr hěn hǎochī. His lamb kebabs are very delicious.	你说什么呢? Nǐ shuō shénme ne? What did you say?
我是美国人。你呢? Wǒ shì měiguórén. Nǐ ne? I'm an American. And you?	什么馅儿的? Shénme xiànr de? What filling is it?
这个多少钱? Zhègè duōshǎo qián? How much is this?	我要吃煎包。 Wǒ yào chī jiānbāo. I want to eat fried buns.

巧克力蛋糕很好吃。 Qiǎokèlì dàngāo hěn hǎochī. Chocolate cake is pretty delicious.	这道菜很好吃！ Zhè dào cài hěn hǎo chī. This dish is very delicious!

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Buying Street Food in Chinese

多少钱？

Duōshǎo qián ?

"How much do they cost?"

Talking Price in Chinese

Food in street markets is sometimes priced in unique ways, as we heard in our dialogue. For the prices given in our dialogue, there are a couple of ways to say the same thing. Below are a couple expressions you may hear and can use.

For Example:

To say "Five for 3 RMB," you can say:

1. 五个三块。
   Wǔ gè sān kuài.

Or:

1. 三块钱五个。
   Sān kuài qián wǔ gè.

To say "One for 2 RMB." you can say:

1. 一个两块。
   Yí gè liǎng kuài.

Or:

1. 两块钱一个。
Liǎng kuài qián yí gè.

Forming a Follow-Up Question (呢, *ne*)

呢 (*ne*) is used to form a follow-up question. Meaning, it is used to ask the same question as the one previously asked, but about another subject or object. So, as is the case in our dialogue:

Mike: 那个呢？那个是什么？
Nà gè ne? Nà gè shì shénme?
"What about that one? What is that?"

We also heard this usage in an earlier lesson of this series:

你呢？
Nǐ ne?
"And you?"

Language Tip

In China, the currency is 人民币 (*rénmínbì*), however this is inferred when speaking about money. In spoken Chinese, rather than saying 人民币 (*rénmínbì*), Chinese speakers will generally just refer to a price as:

number/dollar amount + measure word 块 (*kuài*) + 钱, *qián* ("money").

In fact, the Chinese love to simplify language so much that in spoken Chinese, many times the word for "money" (钱, *qián*) will be omitted and 16RMB will be referred to simply as 16块 (16 *kuài*).

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Caution: Street Food

Street food in China is plentiful and cheap. From designated outdoor food markets to stalls on the side of the road, one can find many delicious Chinese snacks for a very low price. It is to be noted that hygiene standards are not regulated for these sorts of sellers, therefore "the eater must beware." Though most of the time you will not experience any adverse effects from the food bought at these sorts of establishments, there are no guarantees.

Taking precautions can be helpful; look at the cleanliness of the stall and seller. It is also helpful to observe whether the food is cooked fresh for you or if it has been sitting out. Using common sense can be of help in choosing a safer food option. However, there will always be a slight element of risk present in choosing this kind of food option. It may be up to your taste buds to decide whether the risk versus the reward factor is worth it!

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #23 Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Chinese

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
8 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

23

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: 下一站是南京路。
2. MIKE: 对不起，这一站是什么?
3. PASSENGER: 南京路。
4. MIKE: 下一站呢?
5. PASSENGER: 福州路。
6. MIKE: 谢谢你。
7. PASSENGER: 不客气。
8. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: 下一站是福州路。
9. (on the street)
10. MIKE: 对不起，请问长城饭店在哪儿?
11. PASSERBY: 直走，到红绿灯左转。
12. MIKE: 谢谢你。
13. PASSERBY: 不客气。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: 下一站是南京路。

2. MIKE: 對不起，這一站是什麼?

3. PASSENGER: 南京路。

4. MIKE: 下一站呢?

5. PASSENGER: 福州路。

6. MIKE: 謝謝你。

7. PASSENGER: 不客氣。

8. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: 下一站是福州路。

9. (on the street)

10. MIKE: 對不起，請問長城飯店在哪兒?

11. PASSERBY: 直走，到紅綠燈左轉。

12. MIKE: 謝謝你。

13. PASSERBY: 不客氣。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù.

2. MIKE: Duìbùqǐ, zhè yí zhàn shì shénme?

3. PASSENGER: Nánjīng lù.

4. MIKE: Xià yí zhàn ne?

5. PASSENGER: Fúzhōu lù.

6. MIKE: Xièxiè nǐ.

7. PASSENGER: Bú kèqì.

8. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: Xià yí zhàn shì Fúzhōu lù.

9. (on the street)

10. MIKE: Duìbùqǐ, qǐng wèn Chángchéng Fàndiàn zài nǎr?

11. PASSERBY: Zhí zǒu, dào hónglǜdēng zuǒ zhuǎn.

12. MIKE: Xièxiè nǐ.

13. PASSERBY: Búkèqì.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: Next stop is Nanjing Road.

2. MIKE: Excuse me, what stop is this?

3. PASSENGER: Nanjing Road.

4. MIKE: What about the next stop?

5. PASSENGER: Fuzhou Road.

6. MIKE: Thank you.

7. PASSENGER: You're welcome.

8. BUS ANNOUNCEMENT: Next stop is Fuzhou Road.

9. (on the street)

10. MIKE: Excuse me, can you tell me where the Great Wall Hotel is?

11. PASSERBY: Walk straight, when you get to the traffic light, turn left.

12. MIKE: Thank you.

13. PASSERBY: You're welcome.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class

转	轉	zhuǎn	to turn	verb
站	站	zhàn	station	noun
南京	南京	Nánjīng	Nanjing	proper noun
路	路	lù	road, way	noun
对不起	對不起	duìbùqǐ	sorry, excuse me	expression
福州	福州	Fúzhōu	Fuzhou	noun
长城	長城	Chángchéng	the Great Wall	noun
直	直	zhí	straight	adverb/ adjective, adv
走	走	zǒu	walk	verb
到	到	dào	to arrive	verb
红绿灯	紅綠燈	hónglǜdēng	traffic light	noun
左	左	zuǒ	left	adjective
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom	preposition, adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这边要右转。 Zhèbiān yào yòu zhuǎn. Turn right here.	这一站是什么? Zhè yí zhàn shì shénme? What stop is this?
南京是一个历史悠久的城市。 Nánjīng shì yīgè lìshǐ yōujiǔ de chéngshì. Nanjing is a city with a long history.	下一站是南京路。 Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.

我每天都要花四个小时在上下班的路上. wǒ měi tiān dōu yào huā sì ge xiǎoshí zài shàngxiàbān de lùshang . I have to spend four hours on the way to and from work.	淮海路在哪儿? Huái hǎi lù zài nǎr? Where is Huai Hai Road?
对不起，请问长城饭店在哪儿? Duìbùqǐ, qǐng wèn Chángchéng Fàndiàn zài nǎr? Excuse me, can you tell me where the Great Wall Hotel is?	福州路在哪儿? Fúzhōu lù zài nǎr? Where is Fuzhou Road?
你去过长城吗? Nǐ qù guò Chángchéng ma? Have you ever been to the Great Wall?	这条路一直走。 Zhè tiáo lù yìzhí zǒu. Go straight down this road.
往前走。 Wǎng qián zǒu. Go straight.	我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.
从这边到那边要多久? Cóng zhèbiān dào nàbiān yào duōjiǔ? How long does it take to go from here to there?	在红绿灯要右拐。 Zài hónglǜdēng yào yòu guǎi. Turn right at the traffic light.
我的生日是在下周。 wǒ de shēngrì shì zài xià zhōu . My birthday is on the next week.	下一站是南京路。 Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

站, zhàn ("stop" - as in "bus stop," "subway stop")
The 'official' full term is 公交车站 (*gōngjiāochē zhàn*) or 车站 (*chē zhàn*).

路, *lù* ("road")

街, *jiē* ("street")

左, *zuǒ* ("left")

右, *yòu* ("right")

There are two ways to say "to turn" in Chinese.

1. 轉, *zhuǎn* ("to turn")
2. 拐, *guǎi* ("to turn")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Directions in Chinese
直走，到红绿灯左转。
Zhí zǒu, dào hónglǜdēng zuǒ zhuǎn.
"Walk straight, when you get to the traffic light, turn left."

Giving Directions in Chinese

Here are some phrases and sentence patterns that can be used to give directions in Chinese.

1. 直走
   zhí zǒu
   "walk" / "go straight"
2. 左转 / 左拐
   zuǒ zhuǎn / *zuǒ guǎi*
   "turn left"
3. 右转 / 右拐
   yòu zhuǎn / *yòu guǎi*
   "turn right"
4. 过马路
   guò mǎlù
   "cross the street"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Some Bus Taking Tips

Bus stops are located at some distance apart, therefore it is very helpful to know your stop name in advance and pay attention to the driver or recorded announcement - most buses in China will provide some advance indication as to which stop you are arriving at.

While some buses in bigger cities may take refillable metrocards, others will have a bus "ticket taker" who will come around and collect your fare. Often you will have to tell him or her your destination and he/she will tell you the required fare.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #24 A Brush with Destiny - Two Strangers Reunited

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar

24

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. MIKE: 你今天带扇子了吗?
2. LILI: 嗯? 迈克? 你怎么在这儿?
3. MIKE: 我迷路了。你怎么在这儿?
4. LILI: 我在这儿工作。你觉得中国怎么样?
5. MIKE: 很棒。
6. LILI: 我们找个时间聊一聊，怎么样?
7. MIKE: 这个周末你有时间吗?
8. LILI: 星期天怎么样?
9. MIKE: 太好了。我给你发邮件。星期天见!

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. MIKE: 你今天帶扇子了嗎?
2. LILI: 嗯? 邁克? 你怎麼在這兒?
3. MIKE: 我迷路了。你怎麼在這兒?
4. LILI: 我在這兒工作。你覺得中國怎麼樣?
5. MIKE: 很棒。

CONT'D OVER

6. LILI: 我們找個時間聊一聊，怎麼樣?

7. MIKE: 這個周末你有時間嗎?

8. LILI: 星期天怎麼樣?

9. MIKE: 太好了。我給你發郵件。星期天見!

PINYIN

1. MIKE: Nǐ jīntiān dài shānzi le ma?

2. LILI: En? Màikè? Nǐ zěnme zài zhèr?

3. MIKE: Wǒ mílù le! Nǐ zěnme zài zhèr?

4. LILI: Wǒ zài zhèr gōngzuò. Nǐ juéde Zhōngguó zěnmeyàng?

5. MIKE: Hěn bàng.

6. LILI: Wǒmen zhǎo gè shíjiān liáo yì liáo, zěnmeyàng?

7. MIKE: Zhè gè zhōumò nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma?

8. LILI: Xīngqītiān zěnmeyàng ?

9. MIKE: Tài hǎo le. Wǒ gěi nǐ fā yóujiàn. Xīngqītiān jiàn!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. MIKE: Did you bring your fan today?

2. LILI: Huh? Mike! What are you doing here?

3. MIKE: I'm lost! What are you doing here?

4. LILI: I work here. What do you think of China?

5. MIKE: It's awesome.

6. LILI: We should find a time to chat, what do you think?

7. MIKE: Do you have time this weekend?

8. LILI: How about Sunday?

9. MIKE: Great. I will send you an email. See you Sunday!

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
工作	工作	gōngzuò	to work	noun, verb
聊	聊	liáo	to chat	verb
时间	時間	shíjiān	time	noun
嗯	嗯	en	uh-huh, hmm, huh	interjectory particle
怎么	怎麼	zěnme	how	question pronoun
找	找	zhǎo	to find, to look for	verb
带	帶	dài	to bring	verb

觉得	覺得	juéde	to feel, to think	verb
迷路	迷路	mílù	to get lost	adjective
周末	週末	zhōumò	weekend	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

啊，我很喜欢跟我的团队一块儿工作。 ā , Wǒ hěn xǐhuān gēn Wǒ de tuánduì yīkuàir gōngzuò . Oh, I like working with my team.	电脑不工作了。 Diànnǎo bù gōngzuò le. The computer doesn't work.
我们找个时间聊一聊。 Wǒmen zhǎo gè shíjiān liáo yì liáo. Let's find a time to have a chat.	别再浪费时间了。 Bié zài làngfèi shíjiān le. Don't waste any more time.
嗯？迈克？ 你怎么在这儿? En? Màikè? Nǐ zěnme zài zhèr? Huh? Mike? Why are you here?	他怎么这么凶? Tā zěnme zhème xiōng? How come he's so angry?
我们找个时间聊一聊。 Wǒmen zhǎo gè shíjiān liáo yì liáo. Let's find a time to have a chat.	你今天带扇子了吗? Nǐ jīntiān dài shānzi le ma? Did you bring a fan today?
你觉得中国怎么样? Nǐ juéde Zhōngguó zěnmeyàng? What do you think of China?	在沙漠里最可怕的是迷路。 Zài shāmò lǐ zuì kěpà de shì mílù. In a desert, the most terrible thing is getting lost.
这个周末你有时间吗? Zhè gè zhōumò nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma? Do you have time this weekend?	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

星期天见！ Xīngqītiān jiàn! ("See you Sunday!")
The "Sunday" can be swapped out to make other phrases.

For Example:

1. "See you tomorrow."
   明天见 (*míngtiān jiàn*),

2. "See you next week."
   下个星期见 (*xiàgè xīngqī jiàn*).

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Language for an Unexpected Meeting
我们找个时间聊一聊，怎么样？
Wǒmen zhǎo gè shíjiān liáo yì liáo, zěnmeyàng?
"We should find a time to chat, what do you think?"

Soliciting Input and Opinions Using 怎么样 (*zěnmeyàng*)

怎么样, *zěnmeyàng* ("how about" or "what do you say") can be used to solicit an opinion or get input from someone on a matter. In the dialogue from this lesson, we hear the phrase used as follows:

星期天怎么样？
Xīngqītiān zěnmeyàng?
"How about Sunday?"

It can be used in other situations as well, to solicit opinions. Just put the subject you wish to have an opinion on in front of the 怎么样 (*zěnmeyàng*).

For Example:

1. **咖啡色的怎么样？**
   Kāfēisè de zěnmeyàng
   "How about brown?"

2. **三点钟怎么样？**
   Sān diǎn zhōng zěnmeyàng
   "How about 3 o'clock?"

Reduplication of Verbs 尝(一)尝 / *cháng(yī)chang*

Sometimes to soften the tone of a verb, the verb in Chinese will be reduplicated. In this dialogue, Lili says:

我们找个时间聊一聊，怎么样？
Wǒmen zhǎo gè shíjiān liáo yì liáo zěnmeyàng?
"Let's find a time to have a little chat, how about it?"

Reduplicating the verb simply softens the tone and makes it sound less like a demand. The 一 (*yī*) can be omitted. Other common verbs reduplicated are:

1. 尝一尝
   cháng yì cháng
   "have a taste"

2. 看一看
   kàn yí kan
   "have a look"

3. 走一走
   zǒu yì zǒu
   "take a walk"

Adding Emphasis - 太 + adjective + 了

This sentence structure is used to express a great degree of something. Often used in exclamation to an extreme situation, similar to "so...!" or "too....!" in English. The pattern is:

太 + adjective + 了
(*Tài* + adjective + *le*)

In today's dialogue we heard:

太好了。
Tài hǎo le.
"So great!"

Some other examples:

1. 太好了.
   Tài rè le.
   "(It's) too hot!"

2. 太冷了!
   Tài lěng le!
   "(It's) so cold!"

3. 太高了!
   Tài gāo le!
   "So tall!"

"For" (给, *gěi*) as a Preposition

Sometimes the word 给 (*gěi*) is a verb ("to give"), but sometimes it is used as a preposition ("for; on behalf of"). When a preposition, it indicates the beneficiary of an action performed by another. A use of 给 (*gěi*) as a preposition is found in this lesson's dialogue, namely:

我给你发邮件。
Wǒ gěi nǐ fā yóujiàn.
"I'll send an email to you."

So in this sentence, the beneficiary of the action is Lili in that she will receive the email. The action she is beneficiary of is Mike sending the email. Here, the 给你 (*gěi nǐ*) means "to you." So, literally translated, this sentence means, "I to you send email."

Because 给 (*gěi*) is also very commonly used as a verb, how can you tell them apart? Well, when the 给 (*gěi*) is followed by a noun but no verb, you know it is being used as a verb.

For Example:

1. 她给我礼物。
   Tā gěi wǒ lǐwù.
   "She gave me a gift."

When the 给 (*gěi*) is followed by a noun and a verb then you know it is acting as a preposition.

For Example:

1. 她给我带了礼物。
   Tā gěi wǒ dài le lǐwù.
   "She brought a gift for me."

Language Tip

星期天见!
Xīngqītiān jiàn!
"See you Sunday!"

In the above phrase, the time word can be swapped out and substituted with other times.

For Example:

1. 下个星期见!
   Xià gè xīngqī jiàn!
   "See you next week!"

2. 三点见!
   Sān diǎn jiàn!
   "See you at 3 o'clock!"

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #25 Get Treated Like an Emperor in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
10 Cultural Insight

#25

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: 欢迎你来。请进。

2. MIKE: 阿姨你好，我是迈克。

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: 你好，我是张华,这是我爱人。

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 你好,你好。欢迎。

5. FRIEND'S AUNT: 请坐。

6. MIKE: 谢谢。

7. FRIEND'S AUNT: 来，喝茶。

8. MIKE: 你们家真漂亮。照片上是谁?

9. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 这是我儿子。他现在在深圳。

10. FRIEND'S AUNT: 迈克，你家有几口人?

11. MIKE: 我家有五口人。我爸爸、我妈妈、我姐姐、我、我弟弟。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: 歡迎你來。請進。

2. MIKE: 阿姨你好，我是邁克。

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: 你好，我是張華,這是我愛人。

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 你好,你好。歡迎。

5. FRIEND'S AUNT: 請坐。

6. MIKE: 謝謝。

7. FRIEND'S AUNT: 來，喝茶。

8. MIKE: 你們家真漂亮。照片上是誰?

9. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 這是我兒子。他現在在深圳。

10. FRIEND'S AUNT: 邁克，你家有幾口人?

11. MIKE: 我家有五口人。我爸爸、我媽媽、我姐姐、我、我弟弟。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: Huānyíng nǐ lái. Qǐng jìn.

2. MIKE: Āyí nǐhǎo, wǒ shì Màikè.

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: Nǐhǎo, wǒ shì Zhāng Huá, zhè shì wǒ àirén.

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Nǐhǎo, nǐhǎo. Huānyíng.

5. FRIEND'S AUNT: Qǐngzuò.

6. MIKE: Xièxiè.

7. FRIEND'S AUNT: Lái, hē chá.

8. MIKE: Nǐmen jiā zhēn piàoliàng. Zhàopiàn shàng shì shéi?

9. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Zhè shì wǒ érzi. Tā xiànzài zài Shēnzhèn.

10. FRIEND'S AUNT: Màikè, nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?

11. MIKE: Wǒ jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén. Wǒ bàba, wǒ māma, wǒ jiějie, wǒ, wǒ dìdi.

ENGLISH

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: Welcome, please come in.

2. MIKE: Hello Auntie, I'm Mike.

CONT'D OVER

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: Hello, I'm Zhang Hua. This is my husband.

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Hello, hello. Welcome.

5. FRIEND'S AUNT: Please have a seat.

6. MIKE: Thanks.

7. FRIEND'S AUNT: Here, drink some tea.

8. MIKE: Your home is really beautiful. Who is that in the photo?

9. FRIEND'S UNCLE: This is my son. He is in Shenzhen right now.

10. FRIEND'S AUNT: Mike, how many people are there in your family?

11. MIKE: There are five people in my family. My father, my mother, my older sister, me, and my younger brother.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
来	來	lái	to come
姐姐	姐姐	jiějie	older sister
爸爸	爸爸	bàba	dad
几	幾	jǐ	how many (under ten), a few
家	家	jiā	home, family

茶	茶	chá	tea
喝	喝	hē	to drink
坐	坐	zuò	to sit
爱人	愛人	àirén	spouse, lover
阿姨	阿姨	āyí	auntie
请	請	qǐng	please
弟弟	弟弟	dìdi	younger brother

SAMPLE SENTENCES

他今天晚上来。 Tā jīntiān wǎnshàng lái. He is coming tonight.	你姐姐很漂亮。 Nǐ jiějie hěn piàoliàng. Your older sister is really beautiful.
他爸爸是位厨师。 Tā bàba shì wèi chúshī. His dad is a cook.	你有几个? Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè? How many do you have?
你家的地址是什么? Nǐjiā de dìzhǐ shì shénme? What is your home address?	茶很适合赠送给长辈。 Chá hěn shìhé zèngsòng gěi zhǎngbèi . Tea is a good gift for elders.
我喝茶。 Wǒ hē chá. I drink tea.	女人喝了水。 Nǚrén hē le shuǐ. The woman drank water.
我们坐出租车吧。 Wǒmen zuò chūzūchē ba. Let's take a taxi.	你爱人在哪儿工作? Nǐ àirén zài nǎr gōngzuò? Where does your partner work?

哦，不好意思，请坐。 O, bùhǎoyìsi, qǐngzuò. Oh, sorry! Please sit.	你弟弟好可爱哦！ Nǐ dìdi hǎo kě'ài o! Your little brother is so cute!

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

阿姨, *āyí* ("auntie")
This title is often used to address any woman older than oneself. It can be used within the family, for a 'true' aunt, however, it is also commonly used to address strangers, one's housekeeper, nanny, or any woman older than oneself.

家 (*jiā*)
This term can be used interchangeably to mean either "home" or "family."

儿子, *érzi* ("son")

女儿, *nǚér* ("daughter")

爸爸, *bàba* ("dad")

妈妈, *māma* ("mom")

姐姐, *jiějie* ("older sister")

妹妹, *mèimei* ("younger sister")

哥哥, *gēge* ("older brother")

弟弟, *dìdi* ("younger brother")

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Be a Guest
照片上是谁?
Zhàopiàn shàng shì shéi?

"Who is that in the photo?"

Omission of the possessive particle 的 (*de*)

To convey the possessive form you simply use the pronoun or noun + 的 (*de*).

For Example:

1. 我的
   wǒ de
   "my, mine"

2. 你的
   nǐ de
   "your, yours"

However, when speaking of family members or others with a close personal relationship to the subject, the possessive particle 的 (*de*) is omitted.

For Example:

1. 我爸爸
   wǒ bàba
   "my dad"

2. 我妈妈
   wǒ māma
   "my mom"

3. 我姐姐
   wǒ jiějie
   "my older sister"

4. 我弟弟
   wǒ dìdi
   "my older brother"

Using the Question Word 谁 (*shéi*)

照片上是谁？
Zhàopiàn shàng shì shéi?
"Who is in the photo?"

The question word 谁 (*shéi*) comes at the end of the query, as we hear in this sentence from the dialogue.

上 (*shàng*) as a Preposition

照片上是谁？
Zhàopiàn shàng shì shéi?
"Who is in the photo?"

In the above sentence, 上 is a preposition that means "in" or "on." Note that in Chinese, the preposition attaches after the noun unlike English.

For Example:

1. 车上是谁？
   Chē shàng shì shéi?
   "Who is in the car?"

2. 桌子上是什么？
   Zhuōzi shàng shì shénme?
   "What is on the table?"

Measure Word for Family Members

迈克，你家有几口人？
(*Màikè, nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén*?)

我家有五口人。。。
(*Wǒ jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén...*)

When enumerating people (人, *rén*) in Chinese, the measure word to use is 个 (*ge*) for less formal situations and 位 (*wèi*) in more formal settings. However, when speaking of the number of members of a family, the proper measure word to use is 口 (*kǒu*), which literally means "mouth."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Chinese Hospitality

The Chinese are very hospitable to friends of their relatives. You will find that if you have an introduction to a Chinese person through one of their relatives, they will receive you and treat you like gold. Many times this will involve treating you to meals, taking you out and showing you around their city (if you are a visitor), and in general just being overwhelmingly hospitable and helpful.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #26 Your Home-cooked Meal Away from Home

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
5 Vocabulary
6 Sample Sentences
7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

26

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: 饭好了。迈克，你喜欢吃鱼?
2. MIKE: 嗯，很喜欢。
3. FRIEND'S AUNT: 太好了。
4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 我们吃吧。
5. MIKE: 真好吃。
6. FRIEND'S AUNT: 哪里哪里。
7. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 好吃就多吃点。
8. MIKE: 太多了，我已经吃饱了。
9. FRIEND'S AUNT: 迈克，你觉得中国怎么样?
10. MIKE: 中国非常好，中国人也很好。
11. FRIEND'S UNCLE: 明天我们去公园，你也来吧。
12. MIKE: 太好了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

CONT'D OVER

1. FRIEND’S AUNT: 飯好了。邁克，你喜歡吃魚?

2. MIKE: 嗯，很喜歡。

3. FRIEND’S AUNT: 太好了。

4. FRIEND’S UNCLE: 我們吃吧。

5. MIKE: 真好吃。

6. FRIEND’S AUNT: 哪裡哪裡。

7. FRIEND’S UNCLE: 好吃就多吃點。

8. MIKE: 太多了，我已經吃飽了。

9. FRIEND’S AUNT: 邁克，你覺得中國怎麼樣?

10. MIKE: 中國非常好，中國人也很好。

11. FRIEND’S UNCLE: 明天我們去公園，你也來吧。

12. MIKE: 太好了。

PINYIN

CONT'D OVER

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: Fàn hǎo le. Màikè, nǐ xǐhuān chī yú?

2. MIKE: En, hěn xǐhuān.

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: Tài hǎo le.

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Wǒmen chī ba.

5. MIKE: Zhēn hǎochī.

6. FRIEND'S AUNT: Nǎlǐ nǎlǐ.

7. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Hǎochī jiù duō chī diǎn.

8. MIKE: Tài duō le, wǒ yǐjīng chībǎo le.

9. FRIEND'S AUNT: Màikè, nǐ juéde Zhōngguó zěnmeyàng?

10. MIKE: Zhōngguó fēicháng hǎo, Zhōngguórén yě hěn hǎo.

11. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Míngtiān wǒmen qù gōngyuán, nǐ yě lái ba.

12. MIKE: Tài hǎo le.

ENGLISH

1. FRIEND'S AUNT: The food is ready. Mike, do you like fish?

2. MIKE: Yes, I really like it.

CONT'D OVER

3. FRIEND'S AUNT: Great.

4. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Let's eat.

5. MIKE: So delicious.

6. FRIEND'S AUNT: It's nothing special.

7. FRIEND'S UNCLE: If you like it then eat more!

8. MIKE: It's too much. I'm already full.

9. FRIEND'S AUNT: Mike, what do you think of China?

10. MIKE: China is really great; Chinese people are also very nice.

11. FRIEND'S UNCLE: Tomorrow we are going to the park, you should come too.

12. MIKE: Great!

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
饭	飯	fàn	rice, food	noun
明天	明天	míngtiān	tomorrow	time word
中国人	中國人	Zhōngguórén	Chinese people	noun
非常	非常	fēicháng	extremely	adverb
吃饱了	吃飽了	chī bǎo le	full (of food)	expression
已经	已經	yǐjīng	already	adverb

点	點	diǎn	a little	adverb
哪里哪里	哪裡哪裡	nǎlǐ nǎlǐ	you flatter me	expression
鱼	魚	yú	fish	noun
好了	好了	hǎo le	finished, to be ready	adjective, verb
公园	公園	gōngyuán	park	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你会不会做饭? Nǐ huìbúhuì zuòfàn? Do you know how to cook food?	明天我去公园。 Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán. Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.
中国人很多。 Zhōngguó rén hěnduō. There are many Chinese people.	这个菜非常好。 Zhègè cài fēicháng hǎo. This dish is extremely good.
吃饱了才能走。 Chībǎo le cáinéng zǒu. You can't leave until you are full.	他已经来了。 Tā yǐjīng lái le. He has already come.
他有点儿烦。 Tā yǒu diǎnr fán. He's a little annoyed.	今天有点儿凉。 Jīntiān yǒu diǎnr liáng. Today is a little cold.
哪里哪里，没那么好吃。 Nǎlǐ nǎlǐ, méi nàme hǎochī. No, no, it's not that delicious.	我妈妈做的鱼特香。 Wǒ māma zuò de yú tè xiāng. My mother makes really great fish.
我马上就好了，等等我。别先走。 wǒ mǎshàng jiù hǎo le , děngděng wǒ . bié xiānzǒu . I will be ready soon, so please don't leave without me.	票订好了吗? Piào dìng hǎo le ma? Did you book the ticket?

明天我去公园。
Míngtiān wǒ qù gōngyuán.

Tomorrow, I'm going to the park.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

哪里哪里 (*nǎlǐ nǎlǐ*) and **过奖 (*guòjiǎng*)** can both be used in response to a compliment. The tone is "You're flattering me," or "It's nothing."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Language to Use When a Guest in Someone's Home
饭好了
Fàn hǎo le.
"The food is ready."

"To be finished, completed" (好了, *hǎo le*)

When proclaiming something "finished" or "done," we can just add 好了 (*hǎole*) after the event or thing that has been finished. For example, in our dialogue, when the food was ready, our host said:

饭好了。
fàn hǎo le.
"The food is ready."

Another example of this pattern:

1. 功课好了。
   Gōngkè hǎo le.
   "(I'm) finished (my) homework."

Verb + "a little more" - 多吃点 (*duō chī diǎn*)

In our dialogue, the host encourages their guest to "eat more," a common invitation heard around a Chinese dinner table. The pattern to use to talk about doing an action more is as we heard there.

For Example:

1. 多吃点
   duō chī diǎn
   "eat a little more"

2. 多喝点
   duō hē diǎn
   "drink some more"

3. 多喝点水。
   duō hē diǎn shuǐ.
   "drink more water"

4. 多穿点
   duō chuān diǎn
   "wear more (clothing)"

Please note that you may also hear this pattern with the other forms of the word 点 (*diǎn*).

For Example:

1. 点儿 (*diǎnr*)

2. 一点儿 (*yìdiǎnr*)

Making a "Future Tense" Sentence

There are a couple of ways to express future tense in Chinese, the simplest being the example from our dialogue today.

明天我们去公园
Míngtiān wǒmen qù gōngyuán.
"Tomorrow we're going to the park."

Inserting the "time word" tells us when the action will take place.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Being Invited to a Chinese Meal

When one has invited a guest for a meal a typical display of Chinese hospitality is to continuously dish out food onto the guest's plate. You can attempt to use the protests of '吃饱了' (*chībǎo le*) as heard in the lesson dialogue, however, do not feel that you must finish everything that is dished onto your plate. In the Chinese culture, it is not considered rude to leave some food on the plate. On the contrary, if you keep cleaning the plate it may be viewed as a signal that you are still hungry; thus the continued serving of food.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #27 Reliving the Past - The Chinese Trip Recap

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar

27

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. LILI: 你觉得中国怎么样啊？你在这儿干什么？
2. MIKE: 我在这儿工作。
3. LILI: 你出去玩儿了吗？
4. MIKE: 嗯，我去了外滩、博物馆和玉器市场。
5. LILI: 太好了。
6. MIKE: 我还见到了我朋友的亲戚。
7. LILI: 哇，你还吃了什么？
8. MIKE: 煎包，羊肉串，凤爪。
9. LILI: 嗯，你什么都做了，我们今天干什么呢？
10. MIKE: 这是秘密。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. LILI: 你覺得中國怎麼樣啊？你在這兒幹什麼？
2. MIKE: 我在這兒工作。
3. LILI: 你出去玩兒了嗎？
4. MIKE: 嗯，我去了外灘、博物館和玉器市場。

CONT'D OVER

5. LILI: 太好了。

6. MIKE: 我還見到了我朋友的親戚。

7. LILI: 哇，你還吃了什麼?

8. MIKE: 煎包，羊肉串，鳳爪。

9. LILI: 嗯，你什麼都做了，我們今天幹什麼呢?

10. MIKE: 這是秘密。

PINYIN

1. LILI: Nǐ juéde Zhōngguó zěnmeyàng a? Nǐ zài zhèr gàn shénme?

2. MIKE: Wǒ zài zhèr gōngzuò.

3. LILI: Nǐ chūqù wánr le ma?

4. MIKE: En, wǒ qù le wàitān, bówùguǎn hé yùqì shìchǎng.

5. LILI: Tài hǎole.

6. MIKE: Wǒ hái jiàndào le wǒ péngyǒu de qīnqì.

7. LILI: Wā, nǐ hái chī le shénme?

8. MIKE: Jiānbāo, yángròuchuàn, fèngzhǎo.

9. LILI: En, nǐ shénme dōu zuò le, wǒmen jīntiān gàn shénme ne?

CONT'D OVER

10. MIKE: Zhè shì mìmì.

ENGLISH

1. LILI: What do you think of China? What things have you done here?
2. MIKE: I came here for work.
3. LILI: Did you go out and have some fun?
4. MIKE: Yeah, I went to the Bund, the museum, and the Jade Market.
5. LILI: Great!
6. MIKE: I also saw my friend's relatives.
7. LILI: Wow, what foods have you eaten?
8. MIKE: Fried buns, lamb kebabs, chicken feet.
9. LILI: Yeah, you've done it all. What are we going to do today then?
10. MIKE: It's a secret.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
还	還	hái	also	adverb
干	幹	gàn	to do	verb
玩儿	玩兒	wánr	to play	verb

出去	出去	chūqù	to get out	verb
见到	見到	jiàndào	to see	verb
朋友	朋友	péngyǒu	friend	noun
秘密	秘密	mìmì	secret	noun
亲戚	親戚	qīnqì	relative	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我已经去了北京，还想去上海。 Wǒ yǐjīng qù le Běijīng, hái xiǎng qù Shànghǎi. I've already been to Beijing, and still want to visit Shanghai.	你在外面儿干什么? Nǐ zài wàimiànr gàn shénme? What are you doing outside?
孩子們去玩儿了。 Háizimen qù wánr le. The children went to play.	星期五我们玩儿得很开心。 Xīngqīwǔ wǒmen wánr de hěn kāixīn. On Friday we had a great time.
他出去了一会儿, 应该马上就会回来. tā chūqu le yìhuìr, yīnggāi mǎshàng jiù huì huílai. He went out for a bit, (and) should be back soon.	我们出去走一走吧。 Wǒmen chūqù zǒu yì zǒu ba. Let's go outside and walk around.
今天很高兴见到你。 Jīntiān hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very happy to see you today.	她本来和我是朋友，直到她知道升职的是我而不是她。 tā běnlái hé wǒ shì péngyou , zhídào tā zhīdào shēngzhí de shì Wǒ ér bu shì tā . She was a friend of mine until I got the promotion instead of her.
他是我二十年的朋友了。 tā shì wǒ èrshí nián de péngyou le . He has been my friend for twenty years.	我最好的朋友和我去哪儿都在一起。 wǒ zuì hǎo de péngyou hé wǒ qù nǎr dōu zài yìqǐ . My best friend and I go everywhere together.

他是我的朋友。 Tā shì wǒ de péngyǒu. He is my friend.	这是我们的秘密。 Zhè shì wǒmen de mìmì. This is our secret.

你去中国的时候要看我的亲戚.
Nǐ qù Zhōngguó de shíhòu yào kàn wǒ de qīnqì.

When you go to China you have to go see my relatives.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

干什么 (*gàn shénme*)

干(*gàn*) is another word for "to do" in Chinese. It is often used very colloquially. A very common expression you will hear that also uses 干(*gàn*) is 干吗 (*gànmá*), which is kind of like "What the heck?" or "What are (you) doing?" in English.

玩儿, *wánr* ("to play")

Though the literal meaning is, "to play," 玩儿 (*wánr*) can also be used when speaking of going out, having a good time, or enjoying something. You will commonly hear adults talking about going out to "play."

还 (*hái*)

There are many different definitions / usages of the word 还 (*hái*), including "still," "also," "yet," and "fairly." In the dialogue today, 还 (*hái*) means "also" or "what else."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is How to Use the Past Tense in Chinese

你出去玩儿了吗?
"Did you go out and have some fun?"

了 (*le*) - To Indicate a Completed Action

To indicate that an action is complete or happened in the past, Chinese uses the verb suffix 了 (*le*).

Only action verbs can be marked as complete in this way. If the verb is a stative verb, an adjectival verb, or a modal verb, the 了 (*le*) particle indicates a change in status not completion.

The 了 (*le*) suffix will generally be placed right after the verb. However, 了 (*le*) may also occur after the verb + object.

Examples of the Usage of 了 (*le*) From the Lesson Dialogue:

1. 你出去玩儿了吗?
   Nǐ chūqù wánr le ma?
   "Did you go out and have some fun?"

2. 我去了外滩...
   Wǒ qù le wàitān...
   "I went to the Bund..."

3. 我还见到了我朋友的亲戚。
   Wǒ hái jiàn dào le wǒ péngyǒu de qīnqì.
   "I also saw my friend's relatives."

4. 你还吃了什么?
   Nǐ hái chī le shénme?
   "What else did you eat?"

5. 你什么都做了
   Nǐ shénme dōu zuò le.
   "You did everything."

In Chinese, a completed action will not always be indicated with the 了 (*le*). At times, context and time words will also indicate that an action took place in the past.

Identifying People Using the Possessive '的'

To identify another person and their relationship to another, we use the particle 的 (*de*), which expresses possession. We see an example in our dialogue:

我朋友的亲戚。
Wǒ péngyǒu de qīnqì.
"My friend's relative(s)."

However, when speaking of family members or others with a close personal relationship to the subject, the possessive particle 的 (*de*) is usually omitted.

For Example:

1. 我爸爸
   wǒ bàba
   "my dad"

2. 我姐姐
   wǒ jiějiě
   "my older sister"

Also, if there is more than one possessive structure in the sentence, usually all of the 的 (*de*) particles can be omitted, only keeping the last one in sequence. Thus, as in the example in the dialogue, although technically the structure would be 我的朋友的亲戚. (*Wǒ de péngyǒu de qīnqì.*), it is more natural to simply say 我朋友的亲戚 (*Wǒ péngyǒu de qīnqì.*).

"Everything" (什么都 / 什么也, *shénme dōu* / *shénme yě*)

To express "everything" in Chinese, you use the following pattern:

什么都
shénme dōu

Or

什么也
shénme yě

Example From the Lesson Dialogue:

1. 你什么都做了。
   Nǐ shénme dōu zuò le.
   "You did everything."

Another Example:

1. 他什么都知道。
   Tā shénme dōu zhīdào.
   "He knows everything."

If there is an object in the pattern, you put the object between the 什么 and the 都 or 也..

For Example:

1. 什么车都好
   Shénme chē dōu hǎo.
   "Every car is good."

2. 我什么工作都做了。
   Wǒ shénme gōngzuò dōu zuò le.
   "I did all the work."

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #28
Taking the Scenic Route in China

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
3 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
6 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

#28

COPYRIGHT © 2013 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. TICKET AGENT: 下一位。

2. MIKE: 你们这儿有什么旅行?

3. TICKET AGENT: 我们有城市旅游，还有文化旅游。

4. MIKE: 哪个好?

5. TICKET AGENT: 城市旅游会去上海的重要景点。文化旅游会去五个博物馆，还会去上海老城。

6. MIKE: 导游会说英语吗?

7. TICKET AGENT: 对，她会说英语。

8. MIKE: 我要文化旅游，两张票。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. TICKET AGENT: 下一位。

2. MIKE: 你們這兒有甚麼旅行?

3. TICKET AGENT: 我們有城市旅游，還有文化旅游。

CONT'D OVER

4. MIKE: 哪個好?

5. TICKET AGENT: 城市旅游會去上海的重要景點。文化旅游會去五個博物館，還會去上海老城。

6. MIKE: 導游會說英語嗎?

7. TICKET AGENT: 對，她會說英語。

8. MIKE: 我要文化旅游，兩張票。

PINYIN

1. TICKET AGENT: Xià yí wèi.

2. MIKE: Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme lǚxíng?

3. TICKET AGENT: Wǒmen yǒu chéngshì lǚyóu, hái yǒu wénhuà lǚyóu.

4. MIKE: Nǎgè hǎo?

5. TICKET AGENT: Chéngshì lǚyóu huì qù Shànghǎi de zhòngyào jǐngdiǎn. Wénhuà lǚyóu huì qù wǔ gè bówùguǎn, hái huì qù Shànghǎi lǎochéng.

6. MIKE: Dǎoyóu huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?

7. TICKET AGENT: Duì, tā huì shuō yīngyǔ.

8. MIKE: Wǒ yào wénhuà lǚyóu, liǎng zhāng piào.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. TICKET AGENT: Next.

2. MIKE: What tours do you have here?

3. TICKET AGENT: We have a city tour and we also have a culture tour.

4. MIKE: Which one is good?

5. TICKET AGENT: The city tour will go to Shanghai's main tourist spots. The culture tour will go to five museums and also will go to the old parts of Shanghai.

6. MIKE: Can the tour guide speak English?

7. TICKET AGENT: Yes, she can speak English.

8. MIKE: I'll go for the culture tour; two tickets.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English
哪	哪	nǎ / něi	which
景点	景點	jǐngdiǎn	tourist spots
旅游	旅游	lǚyóu	travel, tour
会	會	huì	will
文化	文化	wénhuà	culture
旅行	旅行	lǚxíng	travel, tour
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom
老城	老城	lǎochéng	old city

导游	導游	dǎoyóu	tour guide

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我应该用哪把钥匙? Wǒ yīnggāi yòng nǎ bǎ yàoshi? Which key should I use?	你是哪国人? Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén ? Which country are you from?
新天地是上海的一个景点。 Xīntiāndì shì Shànghǎi de yí gè jǐngdiǎn. Xintiandi is a tourist site in Shanghai.	旅游业是这里的主要经济来源。 Lǚyóu yè shì zhèlǐ de zhǔyào jīngjì láiyuán. The tourism industry is one of the main sources of the economy here.
为了去旅游，他把房子卖掉了。 Wèile qù lǚyóu, tā bǎ fángzi màidiàole. He sold off his home so he could go traveling.	你会爱我一辈子吗? Nǐ huì ài wǒ yíbèizi ma? Will you love me a lifetime?
今天会下雨。 Jīntiān huì xiàyǔ. It will rain today.	中国文化很有意思. Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn yǒu yìsī. Chinese culture is very interesting.
你怎么没和他去旅行啊? Nǐ zěnme méi hé tā qù lǚxíng a? Why didn't you go traveling with him?	下一站是南京路。 Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.
去上海老城逛逛很有意思。 Qù Shànghǎi lǎochéng guàngguang hěn yǒu yìsī. Looking around the old parts of Shanghai is really interesting.	导游会带你去逛很多景点。 Dǎoyóu huì dài nǐ qù guàng hěn duō jǐngdiǎn. The tour guide will take you to see many tourist sites.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

旅行 / 旅游 (*lǚxíng / lǚyóu*)
These words are pretty much interchangeable and are used to describe "to tour" or "to travel."

老城, *lǎo chéng* ("old city")
This word is a contraction of the word for "old" (老, *lǎo*) and the word for "city" (城市, *chéngshì*).

景点, *jǐngdiǎn* ("tourist sites," "scenic spots")
The main sites to see on a trip are called 景点 (*jǐngdiǎn*) in Chinese. It's not uncommon for someone to inquire as to the "must-see spots" for any tourist destination in China. Often a tour in China will entail hitting as many 景点 (*jǐngdiǎn*) as possible in a very efficient manner.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Adjectival Verbs
城市旅游会去上海的重要景点。
Chéngshì lǚyóu huì qù Shànghǎi de zhòngyào jǐngdiǎn.
"The city tour will go to Shanghai's main tourist spots."

Adjectival verbs in Chinese are like adjectives in English; words used to describe people, things, etc.

In Chinese, these adjectival verbs are not preceded by a linking verb (i.e. "to be") like they are in English (for example, "She is tall"). Rather, they are linked with an intensifier like 很 (*hěn*), or nothing at all. So, for example, "She is tall" in Chinese can be either:

1. 她高
   tā gāo
   or
2. 她很高
   tā hěn gāo

Note: Adjectival verbs are negated by 不 (*bù*), not 没 (*méi*).

Comparative Meaning

In today's dialogue, we see an adjectival verb 好 (*hǎo*) used to infer a comparitive meaning. How so? The sentence was:

哪个好？
Nǎgè hǎo?
"Which one is better?"

In this subtle form of a comparison sentence, the context tells us that he is asking which is the better of the two. This is just one way of making comparison structures.

Indicating Future with 会 (*huì*)

会 (*huì*) is a modal verb that can be used to indicate future tense. We see an example of 会 (*huì*) used in this way in the lesson dialogue.

For Example:

1. 城市旅游会去上海的重要景点。
   Chéngshì lǚyóu huì qù Shànghǎi de zhòngyào jǐngdiǎn.
   "The city tour will go to Shanghai's main tourist spots."

2. 文化旅游会去五个博物馆，还会去上海老城。
   Wénhuà lǚyóu huì qù wǔ gè bówùguǎn, hái huì qù Shànghǎi lǎochéng.
   "The culture tour will go to five museums, and also will go to the old parts of Shanghai."

Expressing Ability with 会 (*huì*)

We can also use the modal verb 会 (*huì*) to express ability in Chinese, as we see in the following example from the dialogue:

导游会说英语吗？
Dǎoyóu huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?
"Can the tour guide speak English?"

It can also be used to express ability in other things, including sports, ability to play an instrument, etc.

For Example:

1. 她会弹吉他吗?
   Tā huì tán jítā ma?
   "Can she play guitar?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Touring China

There are pros and cons to taking tours in China. If you don't speak Chinese, a tour can be a convenient and safe way to see different areas of the country. However, as a tour participant, one must be prepared; excursions to tourist sites on the itinerary are often fit in between a busy schedule of prearranged tours of more contrived 'tourist sites:' jade carving factories, traditional Chinese medicine clinics with pulse-taking, diagnosing 'doctors,' tea shops, and pearl cream pushers. This all in a thinly veiled attempt to get the tour patrons to buy overpriced goods. That being said, these side journeys can make for an excellent opportunity to practice your Chinese in a low-stress environment, and there is something to be said for the peace of mind that comes with sitting back and letting someone else arrange your travel for you.

Either way, traveling in China is sure to be exciting and rewarding. And who knows, there just might be the perfect corner in your living room for that oversized jade bok choy carving.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #29 Tour de

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

29

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. TOUR GUIDE: 我们的左边是宋庆龄故居。
2. LILI: 她是孙中山的妻子。
3. MIKE: 孙中山是谁?
4. LILI: 我一会儿再告诉你。
5. TOUR GUIDE: 我们的右边是新天地。
6. MIKE: 哇，真漂亮。
7. LILI: 一会儿我们可以去那儿走一走。
8. TOUR GUIDE: 前面就是人民广场了。
9. MIKE: 哦，那是个公园。
10. LILI: 那儿有人跳舞。
11. MIKE: 哇!

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. TOUR GUIDE: 我們的左邊是宋慶齡故居。
2. LILI: 她是孫中山的妻子。
3. MIKE: 孫中山是誰?

CONT'D OVER

4. LILI: 我一會兒再告訴你。

5. TOUR GUIDE: 我們的右邊是新天地。

6. MIKE: 哇，真漂亮。

7. LILI: 一會兒我們可以去那兒走一走。

8. TOUR GUIDE: 前面就是人民廣場了。

9. MIKE: 哦，那是個公園。

10. LILI: 那兒有人跳舞。

11. MIKE: 哇!

PINYIN

1. TOUR GUIDE: Wǒmen de zuǒbiān shì Sòng Qìnglíng gùjū.

2. LILI: Tā shì Sūn Zhōngshān de qīzǐ.

3. MIKE: Sūn Zhōngshān shì shéi?

4. LILI: Wǒ yíhuìr zài gàosù nǐ.

5. TOUR GUIDE: Wǒmen de yòubiān shì Xīntiāndì.

6. MIKE: Wā, zhēn piàoliàng.

7. LILI: Yíhuìr wǒmen kěyǐ qù nàr zǒu yì zǒu.

CONT'D OVER

8. TOUR GUIDE: Qiánmian jiùshì Rénmín Guǎngchǎng le.

9. MIKE: O, nà shì gè gōngyuán.

10. LILI: Nàr yǒurén tiàowǔ.

11. MIKE: Wa!

ENGLISH

1. TOUR GUIDE: On the left is the former residence of Song Qingling.

2. LILI: She was Sun Yatsen's wife.

3. MIKE: Who is Sun Yatsen?

4. LILI: I'll tell you later on.

5. TOUR GUIDE: On our right is Xintiandi.

6. MIKE: Wow, it's beautiful.

7. LILI: Later we can go walk around in there.

8. TOUR GUIDE: Ahead of us is People's Square.

9. MIKE: Oh, it's a park.

10. LILI: There are people dancing there.

11. MIKE: Wow!

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
跳舞	跳舞	tiàowǔ	to dance	verb
孙中山	孫中山	Sūn Zhōngshān	Sun Yat-Sen	person's name
宋庆龄	宋慶齡	Sòng Qìnglíng	Soong Ching-ling	person's name
谁	誰	shéi	who	question pronoun
一会儿	一會兒	yíhuìr	a while	adverb
再	再	zài	again	adverb
告诉	告訴	gàosù	to tell	verb
右边	右邊	yòubiān	on the right	prepositional phrase
新天地	新天地	Xīntiāndì	Xintiandi	noun
就是	就是	jiùshì	to be (emphasized)	verb
人民广场	人民廣場	Rénmín Guǎngchǎng	People's Square	noun
妻子	妻子	qīzi	wife	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你喜欢跳舞吗? nǐ xǐhuān tiàowǔ ma ? Do you like dance?	你想跳舞吗? Nǐ xiǎng tiàowǔ ma? Do you want to dance?
孙中山是我们的国父。 Sūn Zhōngshān shì wǒmen de guófù. Sun Yat-Sen is the father of our country.	宋庆龄的故居很漂亮。 Sòng Qìnglíng de gùjū hěn piàoliàng. Soong Ching-ling's former residence is very beautiful.

我想知道她是谁。 Wǒ xiǎng zhīdào tā shì shéi. I want to know who she is.	他是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is he?
我等一会儿再去。 Wǒ děng yí huìr zài qù. I will go in a little while.	你能再说一遍吗? nǐ néng zài shuō yí biàn ma ? Could you say that again?
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.	她告诉了我一个秘密。 Tā gàosù le wǒ yígè mìmì. She told me a secret.
我已经告诉她了。 Wǒ yǐjīng gàosù tā le. I already told her.	靠右边停。 Kào yòubiān tíng. Stop on the right.
新天地是上海的一个景点。 Xīntiāndì shì Shànghǎi de yí gè jǐngdiǎn. Xintiandi is a tourist site in Shanghai.	那个人就是我哥哥。 Nàgè rén jiùshì wǒ gēge. That person is my brother.
就是这儿，舒服。 Jiùshì zhèr, shūfu. Right here, it's comfortable.	我们可以去人民广场走一走。 Wǒmen kěyǐ qù Rénmín Guǎngchǎng zǒu yì zǒu. We can go to People's Square and walk around.
他的妻子比他大十岁。 Tā de qīzi bǐ tā dà shí suì. His wife is older than him by ten years.	她是我的妻子。 Tā shì wǒ de qīzi. She is my wife.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

宋庆龄 (Sòng Qìnglíng)
Also known as Soong Ching-ling and Madame Sun Yat-Sen.

孙中山 (Sūn Zhōngshān)

Also known as Sun Yat-Sen.

一会儿, *yíhuìr* ("in a while," "later")
Can be used on its own or following a verb to indicate the action is to be done "a while."

新天地 (*Xīntiāndì*)
Xintiandi is a "pedestrian shopping, eating, and entertainment area" in the French Concession neighborhood of Shanghai. The area was restored at the time when many of the neighborhood's shikumen houses were being demolished to make way for office complexes and residential highrises. The restored shikumen houses of *Xintiandi* now house art galleries, cafes, and restaurants.

人民广场, *Rénmín Guǎngchǎng* ("People's Square")
Located in central Shanghai, just off of Nanjing Road, People's Square is a large public square and park area. Prior to 1949, People's Square was a part of the horseracing course of Shanghai. After gambling and horseracing were banned, a part of the race course became the People's Square, now the site of the Shanghai Museum and Shanghai Municipal Government offices.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Tourist Sites around Shanghai and How to Use 就是 (*jiùshì*) to Add Emphasis

前面就是人民广场了。
Qiánmiàn jiùshì rénmín guǎngchǎng le.
"Ahead of us is People's Square."

就是 (*jiùshì*)

就 (*jiù*) is used as an adverb here, that is used to confirm and stress the verb following...in this case "to be," or *shì*.

就是 (*jiùshì*) is often used for emphasis, and in this case, it's the fact that this park is in front of them. It could be likened in feeling to this translation in English: "And now in front of us what we have here is People's Square."

了 (*le*) Signifying a Change in Situation or Status

前面就是人民广场了。
Qiánmiàn jiùshì Rénmín Guǎngchǎng le.
"Ahead of us is People's Square."

The 了 (*le*) is used here to signify a change in situation or status. In this sentence, it signifies that they have now approached a new site, the People's Square.

Reduplication of Verbs 走一走 (*zǒu yì zǒu*)

Some times to soften the tone of a verb, the verb in Chinese will be reduplicated. In the dialogue, 走一走 (*zǒu yì zǒu*) is used to mean "to take a walk around."

For Example:

1. 一会儿我们可以去那儿走一走。
   Yíhuìr wǒmen kěyǐ qù nàr zǒu yì zǒu.
   "Later we can go walk around in there."

You will also sometimes hear the following, though the 一 (*yī*) is often omitted.

For Example:

1. 尝一尝
   cháng yì cháng
   "have a taste"

Reduplicating the verb simply softens the tone and makes it sound less like a demand. Other common verbs reduplicated are:

1. 看一看
   kàn(yí)kan
   "have a look"

再 (*zài*)

再 (*zài*) is another word that can refer to the future. In the context we see in this dialogue, it is used to indicate one is putting something off to a future time.

For Example:

1. 我一会儿再告诉你。
   Wǒ yíhuìr zài gàosù nǐ.
   "I'll tell you later on."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

宋庆龄 (Sòng Qìnglíng)

Also known as Soong Ching-ling and Madame Sun Yat-Sen. She came from a wealthy Shanghai family and attended a university in the United States. She married Sun Yat-Sen in 1915; her parents greatly opposed the match, as Dr. Sun was twenty-six years her senior. After Sun's death in 1925, she became active in politics herself. Her former residence in Shanghai has also been converted into a memorial museum.

孙中山 (Sūn Zhōngshān)

Also known as Sun Yat-Sen, he was a Chinese revolutionary and political leader. He is often referred to as the Father of Modern China. Sun played an instrumental role in overthrowing the Qing Dynasty in 1911. He was also famed for developing a political philosophy known as the "Three Principles of the People."

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Chinese S1 #30 Parting is Sweet and Sour

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
3 Pinyin
4 English
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7 Grammar

30

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. LILI: 我今天很开心，谢谢你。
2. MIKE: 我也是，我没想到上海这么大。
3. LILI: 对啊，我也没想到。
4. MIKE: 可惜，我明天要走了。
5. LILI: 你还回来吗?
6. MIKE: 会的。这儿有很多工作机会。
7. LILI: 好。
8. MIKE: 保持联络。我还要学汉语呢。
9. LILI: 好啊。慢走。
10. MIKE: 谢谢，再见。
11. LILI: 再见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. LILI: 我今天很開心，謝謝你。
2. MIKE: 我也是，我沒想到上海這麼大。
3. LILI: 對啊，我也沒想到。

CONT'D OVER

4. MIKE: 可惜，我明天要走了。

5. LILI: 你還回來嗎?

6. MIKE: 會的。這兒有很多工作機會。

7. LILI: 好。

8. MIKE: 保持聯絡。我還要學漢語呢。

9. LILI: 好啊。慢走。

10. MIKE: 謝謝，再見。

11. LILI: 再見。

PINYIN

1. LILI: Wǒ jīntiān hěn kāixīn, xièxiè nǐ.

2. MIKE: Wǒ yě shì, wǒ méi xiǎngdào Shànghǎi zhème dà.

3. LILI: Duì a, wǒ yě méi xiǎngdào.

4. MIKE: Kěxī, wǒ míngtiān yào zǒu le.

5. LILI: Nǐ hái huílái ma?

6. MIKE: Huì de. Zhèr yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò jīhuì.

7. LILI: Hǎo.

CONT'D OVER

8. MIKE: Bǎochíliánluò. Wǒ hái yào xué hànyǔ ne.

9. LILI: Hǎo a. Mànzǒu.

10. MIKE: Xièxiè, zàijiàn.

11. LILI: Zàijiàn.

ENGLISH

1. LILI: I had a really nice time today, thank you.

2. MIKE: Me too; I didn't realize Shanghai was so big.

3. LILI: Yeah, I didn't realize either.

4. MIKE: It's too bad I have to leave tomorrow.

5. LILI: Are you going to come back again?

6. MIKE: I will. There are a lot of work opportunities here.

7. LILI: Good.

8. MIKE: Keep in touch. I need to keep studying Chinese.

9. LILI: All right. Take care.

10. MIKE: Thanks, goodbye.

11. LILI: Goodbye.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
慢走	慢走	mànzǒu	take care	phrase
没想到	沒想到	méi xiǎngdào	to not realize	phrase
这么	這麼	zhème	so very	adverb
可惜	可惜	kěxī	it's a pity, it's a shame	phrase
大	大	dà	big, large	adjective
走	走	zǒu	walk	verb
还	還	hái	still, yet	adverb
回来	回來	huílái	to return	verb
工作	工作	gōngzuò	to work	noun, verb
机会	機會	jīhuì	opportunity	noun
学	學	xué	to study, to learn	verb
汉语	漢語	hànyǔ	Chinese (language)	noun
开心	開心	kāixīn	happy	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

再见！慢走！ Zàijiàn! Mànzǒu! Goodbye! Take care!	我没想到他是你弟弟. Wǒ méi xiǎngdào tā shì nǐ dìdi. I didn't realize he is your little brother.
真没想到，你的汉语这么好。 zhēn méi xiǎng dào , nǐ de hàn yǔ zhè me hǎo. I would never have thought your Chinese is this good.	那个女孩真好看。 Nàgè nǚhái zhēn hǎokàn. That girl is really good-looking.
这是我见过的最大的船。 zhè shì wǒ jiànguo de zuì dà de chuán . This is the largest ship I've ever seen.	你的车子好大！ Nǐ de chēzi hǎo dà! Your car is really big!

我们走吧。 Wǒmen zǒu ba. Let's go.	你还在做兼职吗? Nǐ hái zài zuò jiānzhí ma? Do you still work part time?
他的车坏了，现在还在修。 Tā de chē huài le, xiànzài hái zài xiū. His car is broken and is still being repaired.	他喜欢喜剧片，还喜欢动作片。 Tā xǐhuān xǐjùpiānr, hái xǐhuān dòngzuòpiānr. He likes comedies and action films.
他老是在巷子口徘徊，等待他的妻子回来。 Tā lǎoshì zài xiàngzǐkǒu páihuái, děngdài tā de qīzǐ huílái. He's always pacing in the alley, waiting for his wife to return.	他差不多要回来了。 Tā chàbuduō yào huílái le. He is almost back.
啊，我很喜欢跟我的团队一块儿工作。 ā , Wǒ hěn xǐhuān gēn Wǒ de tuánduì yīkuàir gōngzuò . Oh, I like working with my team.	电脑不工作了。 Diànnǎo bù gōngzuò le. The computer doesn’t work.
谢谢你给我那么好得机会. Xièxiè nǐ gěi wǒ nàme hǎo děi jīhuì. Thanks for giving me such a good opportunity.	我要学法语。 Wǒ yào xué Fǎyǔ. I want to study French.
你会说汉语吗? Nǐ huì shuō hànyǔ ma? Can you speak Chinese?	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

没想到, *méi xiǎngdào* ("to not realize")

这么大, *zhème dà* ("so big")
这么 + adjective can be used to emphasize.

可惜, *kěxī* ("it's a pity," "it's a shame")
Can either be used on its own or preceding a clause.

保持联络, *bǎochí liánluò* ("keep in touch")
Can be used as a farewell greeting.

慢走, *màn zǒu* ("take care," literally, "walk slowly")
A farewell wish often said to someone taking their leave.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Some Farewell Phrases in Chinese
你还回来吗？
Nǐ hái huílái ma?
"Are you going to be coming back?"

要 + verb + 了 ("About to Happen")

我明天要走了。
Wǒ míngtiān yào zǒu le.
"I have to leave tomorrow."

Using the pattern 要 + verb + 了 (*yào* + verb + *le*) signifies an action that is "about to happen" or will take place in the near future.

还 ("Still")

我还要学汉语呢。
Wǒ hái yào xué hànyǔ ne.
"I still have to study Chinese."

你还回来吗？
Nǐ hái huí lai ma?
"Are you going to be coming back?"

The word 还 (*hái*) in Chinese is used to express an ongoing situation or to introduce additional actions performed by the subject. It has the meaning of "still," "in addition," "also," etc.

The 呢 Particle

The 呢 (*ne*) particle is used at the end of a declarative sentence to confirm a fact.

ChineseClass101.com

ChineseClass101.com



3 MINUTE CHINESE

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #1 Self Introduction

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

1

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你好，我叫李梅。
2. 早上好，我是李梅。
3. 很高兴见到你。
4. 很高兴认识您。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你好，我叫李梅。
2. 早上好，我是李梅。
3. 很高興見到你。
4. 很高興認識您。

PINYIN

1. Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào lǐméi.
2. Zǎoshang hǎo, wǒ shì lǐméi.
3. Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.
4. hěn gāo xìng rèn shi nín.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Hi I'm Limei.

2. Good morning, I'm Limei.

3. Nice to meet you.

4. It's very nice to meet you.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
叫			to be called	verb
你好			Hi	phrase
李梅			Limei, a erson's name	proper noun
早上好	早上好	zǎoshàng hǎo	good morning	phrase
是			am	verb
很	很	hěn	very	adverb, adjective
高兴			happy	adjective
见到			to meet, to see	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
认识			to meet	verb
您	您	nín	you (formal)	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	早上好，先生。 Zǎoshàng hǎo，Xiānshēng. Good morning, Sir.
你的毛衣很难看。 Nǐ de máoyī hěn nánkàn. Your sweater is very ugly.	DVD很便宜 DVD hěn piányì. The DVD is very cheap.
是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你好，我叫李梅。**	***Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào lǐméi.***	**Hi I'm Limei.**
Word 1		你好	*nǐhǎo*	Hi
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 3		叫	*jiào*	to be called
Word 4		李梅	*lǐméi*	Limei, a erson's name
Phrase 2	**formal**	**早上好，我是李梅。**	***Zǎoshang hǎo, wǒ shì lǐméi.***	**Good morning, I'm Limei.**
Word 1		早上好	*zǎoshàng hǎo*	Good morning

Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 3		是	*shì*	am
Word 4		李梅	*lǐméi*	Limei, a person's name
Phrase 3	**informal**	**很高兴见到你。**	***Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.***	**Nice to meet you.**
Word 1		很	*hěn*	very
Word 2		高兴	*gāoxìng*	happy
Word 3		见到	*jiàndào*	to meet, to see
Word 4		你	*nǐ*	you
Phrase 4	**formal**	**很高兴认识您。**	***hěn gāo xìng rèn shi nín.***	**It's very nice to meet you.**
Word 1		很	*hěn*	very
Word 2		高兴	*gāoxìng*	happy
Word 3		认识	*rènshi*	to meet
Word 4		您	*nín*	you (formal)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

It's very common for men to shake hands when first introducing themselves in China. Women will also shake hands when in business settings, but in social or casual situations, it is more common for them to nod or simply smile instead, as these gestures show friendliness. So make sure you do the right greeting actions depending on the situation!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #2 Greetings

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

2

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你好。
2. 您好。
3. 再见。
4. 回头见。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你好
2. 您好
3. 再見
4. 回頭見

PINYIN

1. nǐhǎo
2. nín hǎo.
3. zàijiàn
4. huítóu jiàn.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Hi.

2. Good day.

3. See you.

4. See you later.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
见			to meet	adverb
回头			in a while	verb
您	您	nín	you (formal)	pronoun
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
你好。			Hi	phrase
再	再	zài	again	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?	我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.

他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànliáng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
你能再说一遍吗? nǐ néng zài shuō yí biàn ma ? Could you say that again?	再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to greet someone when you arrive and when you part.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你好。**	***nǐhǎo***	**Hi.**
Word 1		你好。	*nǐhǎo*	Hi
Phrase 2	**formal**	**您好。**	***nín hǎo.***	**Good day.**
Word 1		您	*nín*	you (formal)
Word 2		好	*hǎo*	good
Phrase 3	**informal**	**再见。**	***zàijiàn***	**See you.**
Word 1		再	*zài*	again
Word 2		见	*jiàn*	to meet
Phrase 4	**formal**	**回头见。**	***huítóu jiàn.***	**See you later.**
Word 1		回头	*huítóu*	in a while

Word 2	见	*jiàn*	to meet

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When meeting someone for the first time, some Chinese people will ask *Nǐ shì zuò shénme de*? This question generally means "What do you do?" or "What is your job?" Don't be surprised if you get asked this by someone you've just met; it's a common icebreaker that people in China use to get to know each other better.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #3 Manners

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

3

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 谢谢。
2. 非常感谢。
3. 谢谢你，好的。
4. 谢谢你做的所有的一切。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 謝謝
2. 非常感謝。
3. 謝謝你，好的。
4. 謝謝你做的所有的一切。

PINYIN

1. xièxiè
2. fēicháng gǎnxiè.
3. Xièxiè nǐ, hǎo de.
4. xièxiè nǐ zuò de suǒyǒu de yīqiè.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Thank you.

2. Thank you very much.

3. Thank you, gladly.

4. Thanks for everything.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
非常	非常	fēicháng	very much	adverb
感谢			thanks	phrase
谢谢			thanks	phrase
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
好的			good, okay	phrase
谢谢你			thanks	phrase
做的			did	verb
所有的			all	adjective
一切	一切	yīqiè	everything	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	一切都好，你放心。 Yīqiè dōu hǎo, nǐ fàngxīn. Everything is fine; relax.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to thank other people in various ways.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**谢谢。**	***xièxiè***	**Thank you.**
Word 1		谢谢	*xièxie*	thanks
Phrase 2	**formal**	**非常感谢。**	***fēicháng gǎnxiè.***	**Thank you very much.**
Word 1		非常	*fēicháng*	very much
Word 2		感谢	*gǎnxiè*	thanks
Phrase 3	**formal**	**谢谢你，好的。**	***Xièxiè nǐ, hǎo de.***	**Thank you, gladly.**
Word 1		谢谢	*xièxie*	thanks
Word 2		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 3		好的	*hǎo de*	good, okay
Phrase 4	**formal**	**谢谢你做的所有的一切。**	***xièxiè nǐ zuò de suǒyǒu de yīqiè.***	**Thanks for everything.**
Word 1		谢谢你	*xièxie nǐ*	thanks
Word 2		做的	*zuò de*	did
Word 3		所有的	*suǒyǒu de*	all
Word 4		一切	*yīqiè*	everything

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Xièxie is the simplest and most basic way to say "thank you," and can be used in both formal

and informal situations. However, it’s useful to note that you don’t usually say *xièxiè* to family members or close friends. The expression is polite, but also creates a sense of distance, so don't say *xièxie* to your family or friends.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #4 Asking How Someone Is

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 最近怎么样?
2. 你好吗?
3. 我很好。
4. 不太好。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 最近怎麼樣?
2. 你好嗎?
3. 我很好。
4. 不太好。

PINYIN

1. zuìjìn zěnme yàng?
2. Nǐ hǎo ma?
3. wǒ hěn hǎo。
4. bù tài hǎo.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. How are you?

2. How are you?

3. I'm fine.

4. Not so well.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
不			not	adverb
太			a lot, much, too	adverb
怎么样			how it going	question word
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
最近	最近	zuìjìn	recently, lately	time word, adverb
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
吗			question marker	particle
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
很	很	hěn	very, very much	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我的宝宝最近睡不好觉。 wǒ de bǎobao zuìjìn shuìbuhǎo jiào . My baby hasn't been able to sleep well lately.
最近我很忙。 Zuìjìn wǒ hěn máng. Recently I've been very busy.	你最近好吗? Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo ma? How have you been lately?
我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.	他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànliáng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.
加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.
今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question How are you?.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**最近怎么样?**	***zuìjìn zěnme yàng?***	**How are you?**
Word 1		最近	*zuìjìn*	recently, lately

Word 2		怎么样	*zěnmeyàng*	how it going
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你好吗？**	***Nǐ hǎo ma?***	**How are you?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		好	*hǎo*	good
Word 3		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我很好。**	***wǒ hěn hǎo。***	**I'm fine.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		很	*hěn*	very, very much
Word 3		好	*hǎo*	good
Phrase 4	**formal**	**不太好。**	***bù tài hǎo.***	**Not so well.**
Word 1		不	*bù*	not
Word 2		太	*tài*	a lot, much, too
Word 3		好	*hǎo*	good

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In China, when asking a friend how they're doing, the question "最近怎么样？ (*zuìjìn zěnme yàng*?) " which means "How are you?" is more commonly used than 你好 (*nǐ hǎo*), which means "good day." Also, we use some casual phrases like 嘿！ (*hēi*) to greet and 拜拜 (*bàibài*) to say "bye" to friends.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #5 Making Apologies

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

5

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 不好意思。
2. 对不起。
3. 我不是这个意思。
4. 我很抱歉。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 不好意思
2. 對不起
3. 我不是這個意思。
4. 我很抱歉。

PINYIN

1. bù hǎoyìsi
2. duìbùqǐ
3. wǒ bù shì zhège yìsi.
4. Wǒ hěn bàoqiàn.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Excuse me.

2. Excuse me.

3. I didn't mean it.

4. I'm very sorry.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
抱歉			sorry	phrase
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
意思	意思	yìsi	meaning	noun
不			not	adverb
对不起			sorry	phrase
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
不是			not	adverb
这个			this	pronoun
很	很	hěn	very, very much	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.	他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànliáng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.
加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.	我不明白你的意思。 Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ de yìsi. I don't get your meaning.
我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	今天玩得很开心。 Jīntiān wán de hěn kāixīn. Today was great fun.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to apologise yourself and say that you didn't do it on purpose or you are sorry.

	Register	Thai	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**informal**	**不好意思。**	***bù hǎoyìsi***	**Excuse me.**
Word 1		不	*bù*	not
Word 2		好	*hǎo*	good
Word 3		意思	*yìsi*	meaning
Phrase 2	**formal**	**对不起。**	***duìbùqǐ***	**Excuse me.**
Word 1		对不起	*duìbùqǐ*	sorry
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我不是这个意思。**	***wǒ bù shì zhège yìsi.***	**I didn't mean it.**

Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		不是	*bù shì*	not
Word 3		这个	*zhège*	this
Word 4		意思	*yìsi*	meaning
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我很抱歉。**	***Wǒ hěn bàoqiàn.***	**I'm very sorry.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		很	*hěn*	very, very much
Word 3		抱歉	*bàoqiàn*	sorry

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you accidentally bump into someone in China, say 对不起 (*Duì bu qǐ*) or 不好意思 (*bù hǎoyìsi*), which means “I am sorry.” This shows people that you are genuinely sorry.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #6 Refusing Politely

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

6

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 不，谢谢。
2. 没关系。
3. 我已经有计划了。
4. 不好意思，但是我已经有计划了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 不 謝謝
2. 沒關係。
3. 我已經有計劃了。
4. 不好意思，但是我已經有計劃了。

PINYIN

1. bù, xièxiè.
2. méi guānxì
3. wǒ yǐjīng yǒu jìhuà le.
4. bù hǎoyìsi, dànshì wǒ yǐjīng yǒu jìhuàle.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. No, thank you.

2. It's okay.

3. I already have plans.

4. Sorry, but I already have plans.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
我已经有计划了。			I already have plans.	expression
谢谢			thanks	phrase
没			no	adverb
不	不	bù	no	privative, adverb
关系			relationship	noun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
已经			already	adverb
有	有	yǒu	to have	verb
计划			plan	noun
了	了	le	particle indicating a state	particle
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
意思	意思	yìsi	meaning	noun

但是	但是	dànshì	but	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

下午我不忙。 Xiàwǔ wǒ bù máng. I'm not busy in the late afternoon.	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián . I have no money.	他们院子里有太多垃圾了。 tāmen yuànzi lǐ yǒu tài duō lājī le . They have too much garbage in their garden.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.
他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànliáng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
我不明白你的意思。 Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ de yìsi. I don't get your meaning.	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to refuse politely an invite.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**

Phrase 1	**formal**		***bù, xièxiè.***	**No, thank you.**
Word 1		不	*bù*	no
Word 2		谢谢	*xièxie*	thanks
Phrase 2	**formal**	**没关系。**	***méi guānxì***	**It's okay.**
Word 1		没	*méi*	no
Word 2		关系	*guānxì*	relationship
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我已经有计划了。**	***wǒ yǐjīng yǒu jìhuà le.***	**I already have plans.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		已经	*yǐjīng*	already
Word 3		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 4		计划	*jìhuà*	plan
Word 5		了	*le*	particle indicating a state
Phrase 4	**informal**	**不好意思，但是我已经有计划了。**	***bù hǎoyìsi, dànshì wǒ yǐjīng yǒu jìhuàle.***	**Sorry, but I already have plans.**
Word 1		不	*bù*	no
Word 2		好	*hǎo*	good
Word 3		意思	*yìsi*	meaning
Word 4		但是	*dànshì*	but

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In China, if a person’s invitation gets turned down, it’s not common for that person to push for more details regarding why their invitation was declined. Also, if you have to refuse an invitation in China, it's considered better to state the real reason you cannot go rather than making up a lie. So keep these things in mind, listeners!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #7 Do You Speak English?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

7

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你会说英语吗?
2. 你会英语吗?
3. 是的，我会说英语。
4. 不，我不会说英语。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你會說英語嗎?
2. 你會英語嗎?
3. 是的，我會說英語。
4. 不，我不會說英語

PINYIN

1. nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?
2. nǐ huì yīngyǔ ma?
3. shì de, wǒ huì shuō yīngyǔ.
4. bù, wǒ bùhuì shuō yīngyǔ.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you speak English?

2. Do you speak English?

3. Yes, I speak English.

4. No, I don't speak English.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
不会			cannot	phrase
会			can	verb
说			to speak	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
英语			English	noun
吗			question marker	particle
是的			yes	adverb
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
不	不	bù	no	privative, adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.

下午我不忙。
Xiàwǔ wǒ bù máng.

I'm not busy in the late afternoon.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question Do you speak English?.

	Register	Thai	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**你会说英语吗？**	***nǐ huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?***	**Do you speak English?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		会	*huì*	can
Word 3		说	*shuō*	to speak
Word 4		英语	*yīngyǔ*	English
Word 5		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**informal**	**你会英语吗？**	***nǐ huì yīngyǔ ma?***	**Do you speak English?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		会	*huì*	can
Word 3		英语	*yīngyǔ*	English
Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker

Phrase 3	**formal**	**是的，我会说英语。**	***shì de, wǒ huì shuō yīngyǔ.***	**Yes, I speak English.**
Word 1		是的	*shì de*	yes
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 3		会	*huì*	can
Word 4		说	*shuō*	to speak
Word 5		英语	*yīngyǔ*	English
Phrase 4	**formal**	**不，我不会说英语。**	***bù, wǒ bùhuì shuō yīngyǔ.***	**No, I don't speak English.**
Word 1		不	*bù*	no
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 3		不会	*bùhuì*	cannot
Word 4		说	*shuō*	to speak

CULTURAL INSIGHT

This question is useful not only for English, but for any language you may speak. More and more Chinese people are studying foreign languages nowadays, so you may just get lucky!
Just substitute *Yīngyǔ* with…
Yìdàlìyǔ for Italian.
Éyǔ for Russian.
Xībānyáyǔ for Spanish.
Déyǔ for German.
or any other language you may speak.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #8 Talking About Your Age

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

8

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你多大了?
2. 你几岁了?
3. 我17岁。
4. 无可奉告。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你多大了?
2. 你幾歲了?
3. 我17歲。
4. 無可奉告。

PINYIN

1. nǐ duō dà le?
2. nǐ jǐ suìle?
3. wǒ shíqī suì.
4. wú kě fèng gào.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. How old are you?

2. How old are you?

3. I am 17.

4. I prefer not to say.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
奉告			to tell, to inform	verb
可			can (adding emphasis)	adverb
无			no	adjective
十七			seventeen	number
多大	多大	duō dà	how old	question pronoun
了	了	le	particle indicating a state	particle
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
几			how many	question word
岁			year-old	measure word
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你多大了? Nǐ duō dà le? How old are you? (asking kids or adults)	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

我叫王林。
Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín.

I am called Wang Lin.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask someone's age and to say yours.

	Register	**Thai**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你多大了?**	***nǐ duō dà le?***	**How old are you?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		多大	*duō dà*	how old
Word 3		了	*le*	particle indicating a state
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你几岁了?**	***nǐ jǐ suìle?***	**How old are you?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		几	*jǐ*	how many
Word 3		岁	*suì*	year-old

Word 4		了	*le*	particle indicating a state
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我17岁。**	***wǒ shíqī suì.***	**I am 17.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		十七	*shíqī*	seventeen
Word 3		岁	*suì*	year-old
Phrase 4	**formal**	**无可奉告。**	***wú kě fèng gào.***	**I prefer not to say.**
Word 1		无	*wú*	no
Word 2		可	*kě*	can (adding emphasis)
Word 3		奉告	*fèng gào*	to tell, to inform

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When we talk about numbers like telephone numbers, bus numbers and so on, we pronounce 1 as *yāo*.
For example, a bus number one-oh-one would usually be pronounced as *yāo líng yāo* in Chinese. You can even use *yāo* instead of *yī* meaning "number one" when saying phone numbers. Try it when you are in China! People will be impressed.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #9 Talking about your Nationality

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

9

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我是中国人。
2. 你是中国人吗?
3. 我们是美国人。
4. 你们是日本人。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我是中國人。
2. 你是中國人嗎?
3. 我們是美國人。
4. 你們是日本人。

PINYIN

1. wǒ shì zhōngguórén.
2. nǐ shì zhōngguórén ma?
3. wǒmen shì měiguórén.
4. nǐmen shì rìběnrén.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I am Chinese.

2. Are you Chinese?

3. We are Americans.

4. You are Japanese.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
是			am	verb
中国人			Chinese people	noun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
我们			we	pronoun
吗			question marker	particle
是	是	shì	to be	verb
美国人			American people	noun
你们			you (plural)	pronoun
日本人	日本人	rìběnrén	Japanese people	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	日本人说日语。 Rìběnrén shuō rìyǔ. Japanese people speak Japanese.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to answer where you are from.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**我是中国人。**	***wǒ shì zhōngguórén.***	**I am Chinese.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		是	*shì*	am
Word 3		中国人	*Zhōngguórén*	Chinese people
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你是中国人吗?**	***nǐ shì zhōngguórén ma?***	**Are you Chinese?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		是	*shì*	am
Word 3		中国人	*Zhōngguórén*	Chinese people

Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我们是美国人。**	***wǒmen shì měiguórén.***	**We are Americans.**
Word 1		我们	*wǒmen*	we
Word 2		是	*shì*	to be
Word 3		美国人	*Měiguórén*	American people
Phrase 4	**formal**	**你们是日本人。**	***nǐmen shì rìběnrén.***	**You are Japanese.**
Word 1		你们	*nǐmen*	you (plural)
Word 2		是	*shì*	to be
Word 3		日本人	*rìběnrén*	Japanese people

"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Since China is such a big country, there is a lot of variety between its different cities. So when people from different parts of the country meet, they often have questions about each other's hometown. In these situations, you will often hear *Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén*? and *Nǐ cóng nǎli lái*? In these cases, you just need to state a town or city name in place of a country name. That's it!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #10 Asking How Much Something Costs

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

10

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 这个多少钱?
2. 这个几钱?
3. 好吧，我要这个。
4. 这个太贵了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 這個多少錢?
2. 這個幾錢?
3. 好吧，我要這個。
4. 這個太貴了

PINYIN

1. zhège duōshǎo qián?
2. zhège jǐ qián?
3. hǎo ba, wǒ yào zhège.
4. zhège tài guì le.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. How much does this cost?

2. How much does this cost?

3. OK, I'll take it.

4. No, thanks. It's too expensive.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
多少	多少	duōshǎo	how much, how many	phrase
好吧	好吧	hǎoba	all right	phrase
这个			this	pronoun
几			how many, a few	question word
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
要	要	yào	to want	verb
太	太	tài	too	adverb
贵			expensive	adjective
了	了	le	particle indicating a state	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

这个多少钱? Zhègè duōshǎo qián? How much is this?	好吧,听你的。 Hǎoba, tīng nǐ de. All right, have it your way.
我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.
他这周末的家庭作业太多了。 tā zhè zhōumò de jiātíngzuòyè tài duō le . He has too much homework for this weekend.	夏天太热了。 Xiàtiān tài rè le. The summer is too hot.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how much something costs.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**这个多少钱?**	***zhège duōshǎo qián?***	**How much does this cost?**
Word 1		这个	*zhège*	this
Word 2		多少	*duōshǎo*	how much, how many
Word 3		钱	*qián*	money
Phrase 2	**informal**	**这个几钱?**	***zhège jǐ qián?***	**How much does this cost?**
Word 1		这个	*zhège*	this

Word 2		几	*jǐ*	how many, a few
Word 3		钱	*qián*	money
Phrase 3	**formal**	**好吧，我要这个。**	***hǎo ba, wǒ yào zhège.***	**OK, I'll take it.**
Word 1		好吧	*hǎoba*	all right
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 3		要	*yào*	to want
Word 4		这个	*zhège*	this
Phrase 4	**formal**	**这个太贵了。**	***zhège tài guì le.***	**No, thanks. It's too expensive.**
Word 1		这个	*zhège*	this
Word 2		太	*tài*	too
Word 3		贵	*guì*	expensive
Word 4		了	*le*	particle indicating a state

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you think something is too expensive, say *Néng piányi diǎn ma?*, which means “Can it be a little cheaper?” This phrase is usually useful in China, but will only work in places where bargaining is allowed, so don’t try it in a place like a large department store.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #11 How to Read Prices

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

11

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 一元。
2. 十元钱。
3. 五十五块六角。
4. 二十六元七角钱。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 一元。
2. 十元錢。
3. 五十五塊六角。
4. 二十六元七角錢。

PINYIN

1. yī yuán
2. shí yuán qián.
3. wǔshíwǔ kuài liù jiǎo.
4. èrshíliù yuán qī jiǎoqián.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. One Yuan.

2. Ten Yuan.

3. Fifty-five Yuan and six Jiao.

4. Twenty-six Yuan and seven Jiao.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
角钱			Chinese Jiao	measure word
元			Chinese Yuan	measure word
十	十	shí	ten	number
五十五			fifty five	numeral
一	一	yī	one	number
块			Chinese Yuan	measure word
六	六	liù	six	numeral
角			Chinese Jiao	measure word
二十六			twenty six	numeral
七	七	qī	seven	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

现在十点钟。 Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng. It's ten o'clock now.	他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.
我女儿六岁。 Wǒ nǚ'ér liù suì. My daughter is six years old.	我们的公司有七个人。 Wǒmen de gōngsī yǒu qī gè rén. There are seven people in our company.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to read prices.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**一元。**	***yī yuán***	**One Yuan.**
Word 1		一	*yī*	one
Word 2		元	*yuán*	Chinese Yuan
Phrase 2	**formal**	**十元钱。**	***shí yuán qián.***	**Ten Yuan.**
Word 1		十	*shí*	ten
Word 2		元	*yuán*	Chinese Yuan
Word 3		钱	*qián*	money
Phrase 3	**informal**	**五十五块六角。**	***wǔshíwǔ kuài liù jiǎo.***	**Fifty-five Yuan and six Jiao.**
Word 1		五十五	*wǔshíwǔ*	fifty five
Word 2		块	*kuài*	Chinese Yuan
Word 3		六	*liù*	six

Word 4		角	*jiǎo*	Chinese Jiao
Phrase 4	**formal**	**二十六元七角钱。**	***èrshíliù yuán qī jiǎoqián.***	**Twenty-six Yuan and seven Jiao.**
Word 1		二十六	*èrshíliù*	twenty six
Word 2		元	*yuán*	Chinese Yuan
Word 3		七	*qī*	seven
Word 4		角钱	*jiǎqián*	Chinese Jiao

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Do you know how to read years like 1950 in Chinese? You might think it would be long and difficult, but actually, it's super easy. You don't have to say *shíjiǔ-wǔshí*, which is 19-50, or *yīqiān-jiǔbǎi-wǔshí*, which is 1000-900-50. All you need to do is say it number by number, just like a telephone number. So it could be 1-9-5-0 (one, nine, five, zero), or in Chinese, *yī jiǔ wǔ líng*, and then *nián*, the noun for year. In Chinese, the year 1950 is.. *yī jiǔ wǔ líng nián.*

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #12 Asking What Someone is Doing

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

12

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你在干嘛?
2. 你在做什么?
3. 我在学习。
4. 我没做什么。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你在幹嘛?
2. 你在做什麼?
3. 我在學習。
4. 我沒做什麼。

PINYIN

1. nǐ zài gàn ma?
2. nǐ zài zuò shénme?
3. wǒ zài xuéxí.
4. wǒ méi zuò shénme.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. What are you doing?

2. What are you doing?

3. I am studying.

4. I'm doing nothing special.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
什么			what, something	pronoun
没			not	adverb
学习			to study	verb
在			to exisit, to be doing something	verb
干			to do	verb
做	做	zuò	to do	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
嘛			question marker	particle
什么			what	pronoun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你在做什么? Nǐ zài zuò shénme? What are you doing?	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

我叫王林。
Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín.

I am called Wang Lin.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question What are you doing?.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你在干嘛?**	***nǐ zài gàn ma?***	**What are you doing?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		在	*zài*	to exisit, to be doing something
Word 3		干	*gàn*	to do
Word 4		嘛	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你在做什么?**	***nǐ zài zuò shénme?***	**What are you doing?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		在	*zài*	to exist, to be doing somethin

Word 3		做	*zuò*	to do
Word 4		什么	*shénme*	what
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我在学习。**	***wǒ zài xuéxí.***	**I am studying.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		在	*zài*	to exist, to be doing something
Word 3		学习	*xuéxí*	to study
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我没做什么。**	***wǒ méi zuò shénme.***	**I'm doing nothing special.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		没	*méi*	not
Word 3		做	*zuò*	to do
Word 4		什么	*shénme*	what, something

CULTURAL INSIGHT

在 (*Zài*) is one of the common Chinese words used to express location. For example, you can use the word *zài*, to tell a friend where your house is. If you say *wǒjiā zài huāyuán Jiē*, you are saying, “I live at Garden Street.” You can replace *huāyuán Jiē*, meaning “Garden Street,” with any place name to tell someone where you live.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #13 Who Is It?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

13

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 是谁呀?
2. 您是哪位?
3. 是我。
4. 那是我的朋友。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 是誰呀?
2. 您是哪位?
3. 是我。
4. 那是我的朋友。

PINYIN

1. shì shéiyā?
2. nín shì nǎ wèi ?
3. shì Wǒ .
4. nà shì wǒ de péngyou .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Who is it?

2. Who is that?

3. It's me.

4. That is a friend of mine.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
谁		shéi	who	pronoun
呀		ya	modal particle	
我	我	wǒ	I, me	pronoun
是	是	shì	to be	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
那	那	nà	that	pronoun
我的		wǒ de	my	possessive adjective
朋友	朋友	péngyǒu	friend	noun
您	您	nín	you (formal)	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我的朋友很帅。 Wǒ de péngyǒu hěn shuài. My friend is really handsome.	他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	那是什么? Nà shì shénme? What is that?
她本来和我是朋友，直到她知道升职的是我而不是她。 tā běnlái hé wǒ shì péngyou , zhídào tā zhīdào shēngzhí de shì Wǒ ér bu shì tā . She was a friend of mine until I got the promotion instead of her.	他是我二十年的朋友了。 tā shì wǒ èrshí nián de péngyou le . He has been my friend for twenty years.
我最好的朋友和我去哪儿都在一起。 wǒ zuì hǎo de péngyou hé wǒ qù nǎr dōu zài yìqǐ . My best friend and I go everywhere together.	他是我的朋友。 Tā shì wǒ de péngyǒu. He is my friend.
请问您贵姓? Qǐngwèn nín guìxìng? May I ask your surname?	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask who it is.

(Note: in Chinese, you need to use "she" or "he" instead of "that.")

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**informal**	**是谁呀?**	***shì shéiyā?***	**Who is it?**
Word 1		是	*shì*	to be
Word 2		谁	*shéi*	who

Word 3		呀	*ya*	modal particle
Phrase 2	**formal**	您是哪位?	***nín shì nǎ wèi ?***	**Who is that?**
Word 1		您	*nǐn*	you
Word 2		是	*shì*	to be
Word 3		哪位	*nǎ wèi*	who
Phrase 3	**formal**	**是我。**	***shì Wǒ .***	**It's me.**
Word 1		是	*shì*	to be
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I, me
Phrase 4	**formal**	**那是我的朋友。**	***nà shì wǒ de péngyou .***	**That is a friend of mine.**
Word 1		那	*nà*	that
Word 2		是	*shì*	to be
Word 3		我的	*wǒ de*	my
Word 4		朋友	*péngyǒu*	friend

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If someone that you didn't expect is knocking at your door in China, the common question you can ask is Shéi a? before opening the door. This means "Who is it?" in a very natural way. It can be used in all sorts of situations, but be careful with your tone. You could sound cheerful, but you could also sound rude, depending on your tone.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #14 When Are You Leaving?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

14

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你什么时候走?
2. 您什么时候离开?
3. 我两小时之后离开。
4. 我下星期走。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你甚麼时候走?
2. 您甚麼时候離開?
3. 我兩小時之後離開。
4. 我下星期走。

PINYIN

1. nǐ shénme shíhòu zǒu ?
2. nǐn shénme shíhòu líkāi ?
3. Wǒ liǎngxiǎoshí zhīhòu líkāi .
4. Wǒ xiàxīngqī zǒu .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. When are you leaving?

2. When are you leaving?

3. I leave in two hours.

4. I leave next week.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
什么		shénme	what	pronoun
时候	时候	shíhòu	time	noun
离开		líkāi	to leave	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
走		zǒu	to go	verb
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
两小时		liǎngxiǎoshí	two hours	time word
之后		zhīhòu	after	noun
下	下	xià	down, next, bottom	preposition, adjective
星期	星期	xīngqī	week	time word

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.
我的生日是在下周。 wǒ de shēngrì shì zài xià zhōu . My birthday is on the next week.	下一站是南京路。 Xià yí zhàn shì Nánjīng lù. Next stop is Nanjing Road.

这个星期你有什么计划?
Zhè gè xīngqī nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà?

What plans do you have this week?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask when someone is leaving.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你什么时候走?**	***nǐ shénme shíhòu zǒu ?***	**When are you leaving?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		什么	*shénme*	what
Word 3		时候	*shíhòu*	time
Word 4		走	*zǒu*	to go
Phrase 2	**formal**	**您什么时候离开?**	***nǐn shénme shíhòu líkāi ?***	**When are you leaving?**
Word 1		您	*nǐn*	you
Word 2		什么	*shénme*	what

Word 3		时候	*shíhòu*	time
Word 4		离开	*líkāi*	to leave
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我两小时之后离开。**	***Wǒ liǎngxiǎoshí zhīhòu líkāi .***	**I leave in two hours.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		两小时	*liǎngxiǎoshí*	two hours
Word 3		之后	*zhīhòu*	after
Word 4		离开	*líkāi*	to leave
Phrase 4	**informal**	**我下星期走。**	***Wǒ xiàxīngqī zǒu .***	**I leave next week.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		下	*xià*	next
Word 3		星期	*xīngqī*	week
Word 4		走	*zǒu*	to go

CULTURAL INSIGHT

We know the word “when” can be translated in many ways. But the basic translation shénme shíhòu is very important. It’s a useful phrase that can be used in all the situations we’ve talked about. Although sometimes it may cause misunderstandings, if you’re careful with it, you should be able to get the answer you want.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #15 Where Are You Going?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#15

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你上哪儿去?
2. 您要去哪里?
3. 我正要去超市。
4. 我正要去工作。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你上哪兒去?
2. 您要去哪裡?
3. 我正要去超市。
4. 我正要去工作。

PINYIN

1. nǐ shàng nǎr qù ?
2. nǐn yào qù nǎlǐ ?
3. Wǒ zhèng yào qù chāoshì .
4. Wǒ zhèng yào qù gōngzuò .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Where are you going?

2. Where are you going?

3. I'm going to the supermarket.

4. I'm going to work.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
上		shàng	face on	adverb
哪儿		nǎr	where	pronoun
要	要	yào	to be going to, have to	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
去	去	qù	to go	verb
哪里		nǎlǐ	where	pronoun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
正		zhèng	just	adverb
超市	超市	chāoshì	supermarket	noun
工作	工作	gōngzuò	work	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

明天我们要去杭州。 Míngtiān wǒmen yào qù Hángzhōu. Tomorrow, we are going to Hangzhou.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
下周末谁去海边? xià zhōumò shéi qù hǎibiān ? Who is going to the beach next weekend?	我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qù le dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.
我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.
尽管没有多少顾客，这家超市一天24小时都营业。 jǐnguǎn méiyǒu duōshao gùkè, zhè jiā chāoshì yītiān èrshísì xiǎoshí dōu yíngyè . Although there are hardly any customers, the supermarket is open 24 hours a day.	我去超市买东西。 Wǒ qù chāoshì mǎi dōngxi. I'm going to the store to buy things.
不行，我要去工作了。 Bù xíng, wǒ yào qù gōngzuò le. I can't. I have to go to work.	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask where someone is going.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**informal**	**你上哪儿去?**	***nǐ shàng nǎr qù ?***	**Where are you going?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		上	*shàng*	face on

Word 3		哪儿	*nǎr*	where
Word 4		去	*qù*	to go
Phrase 2	**formal**	**您要去哪里？**	***nǐn yào qù nǎlǐ ?***	**Where are you going?**
Word 1		您	*nǐn*	you
Word 2		要	*yào*	to be going to
Word 3		去	*qù*	to go
Word 4		哪里	*nǎlǐ*	where
Phrase 3	**informal**	**我正要去超市。**	***Wǒ zhèng yào qù chāoshì .***	**I'm going to the supermarket.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		正	*zhèng*	just
Word 3		要	*yào*	to be going to
Word 4		去	*qù*	to go
Word 5		超市	*chāoshì*	supermarket
Phrase 4	**informal**	**我正要去工作。**	***Wǒ zhèng yào qù gōngzuò .***	**I'm going to work.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		正	*zhèng*	just
Word 3		要	*yào*	to be going to
Word 4		去	*qù*	to go

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Nǎlǐ can be replaced by nǎr or nǎ almost all the time in daily conversations. But in the sentence *Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén*? you can say *Nǐ shì nǎr rén*? but not *Nǐ shì nǎ rén*? The listener might understand what you're trying to say, but it's not good Chinese.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #16 Asking Directions

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

16

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 车站在哪里?
2. 直走。
3. 右转。
4. 左转。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 車站在哪裡?
2. 直走。
3. 右轉。
4. 左轉。

PINYIN

1. chēzhàn zài nǎlǐ ?
2. zhí zǒu .
3. yòu zhuǎn .
4. zuǒzhuǎn .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Where is the station?

2. Go straight.

3. Turn right.

4. Turn left.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
在	在	zài	at, in	preposition
哪里		nǎlǐ	where	pronoun
右	右	yòu	right	noun
车站		chēzhàn	station	noun
直	直	zhí	straight	adverb/ adjective, adv
左	左	zuǒ	left	noun
走。		zǒu	to walk	verb
转		zhuǎn	to turn	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

靠右边停。 Kào yòubiān tíng. Stop on the right.	这条路一直走。 Zhè tiáo lù yìzhí zǒu. Go straight down this road.

往前走。 Wǎng qián zǒu. Go straight.	我家在左边。 Wǒ jiā zài zuǒbiān. My house is on the left.

如果在这里左转，会走到死角。
rúguǒ zài zhèlǐ zuǒ zhuǎn , huì zǒudàosǐjiǎo.

If you turn left here, you will come to a dead end.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and understend basic directions.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**车站在哪里？**	***chēzhàn zài nǎlǐ ?***	**Where is the station?**
Word 1		车站	*chēzhàn*	station
Word 2		在	*zài*	in
Word 3		哪里	*nǎlǐ*	where
Phrase 2	**formal**	**直走。**	***zhí zǒu .***	**Go straight.**
Word 1		直	*zhí*	straight
Word 2		走。	*zǒu*	to walk
Phrase 3	**formal**	**右转。**	***yòu zhuǎn .***	**Turn right.**
Word 1		右	*yòu*	right
Word 2		转	*zhuǎn*	to turn
Phrase 4	**formal**	**左转。**	***zuǒzhuǎn .***	**Turn left.**

Word 1		左	*zuǒ*	left
Word 2		转	*zhuǎn*	to turn

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tiananmen Square is one of the most recognizable landmarks in all of China. It sits at the center of Beijing, directly across from the Forbidden City. Tiananmen Square is the largest city square in the world and measures 440,000 square meters. Close to the center of the square is Mao Zedong's mausoleum, with The Monument to the People's Heroes located in front. If you have a plan to visit Beijing, this should be on your list of places to visit.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #17 Why?

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

17

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你为什么迟到?
2. 我没赶上火车。
3. 你为什么那么早走?
4. 为了赶火车。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你為甚麼遲到?
2. 我沒趕上火車。
3. 你為甚麼那麼早走?
4. 為了趕火車。

PINYIN

1. nǐ wèishénme chídào ?
2. Wǒ méi gǎnshàng huǒchē .
3. nǐ wèishénme nàme zǎo zǒu ?
4. wèile gǎn huǒchē .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Why are you late?

2. I missed the train.

3. Why do you leave so early?

4. Not to miss the train.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
赶		gǎn	catch up	verb
为了		wèile	for	preposition
走		zǒu	to leave	verb
为什么		wèishénme	why	pronoun
迟到		chídào	be late	verb
没	沒	méi	not (have)	adverb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
赶上		gǎnshàng	catch up	verb
火车		huǒchē	train	noun
那么		nàme	so	adverb
早	早	zǎo	early	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.

你吃早饭了吗?
nǐ chī zǎo fàn le ma ?

Have you eaten breakfast?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer why.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**你为什么迟到?**	***nǐ wèishénme chídào ?***	**Why are you late?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		为什么	*wèishénme*	why
Word 3		迟到	*chídào*	be late
Phrase 2	**formal**	**我没赶上火车。**	***Wǒ méi gǎnshàng huǒchē .***	**I missed the train.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		没	*méi*	not
Word 3		赶上	*gǎnshàng*	catch up
Word 4		火车	*huǒchē*	train

Phrase 3	**formal**	**你为什么那么早走?**	***nǐ wèishénme nàme zǎo zǒu ?***	**Why do you leave so early?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		为什么	*wèishénme*	why
Word 3		那么	*nàme*	so
Word 4		早	*zǎo*	early
Word 5		走	*zǒu*	to leave
Phrase 4	**formal**	**为了赶火车。**	***wèile gǎn huǒchē .***	**Not to miss the train.**
Word 1		为了	*wèile*	for
Word 2		赶	*gǎn*	catch up
Word 3		火车	*huǒchē*	train

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Because we've learned how to say both "why" and "not" in Chinese, you might think you know how to say "Why not?" as well, right? Well, technically it can be *Wèishénme bù?* But that's actually not natural Chinese. Although it makes sense, people don't usually say it, and will say something different depending on the situation. So just remember to be careful about using it!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #18 Possession

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#18

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 有笔吗?
2. 你有笔吗?
3. 有啊。
4. 有，给你。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 有筆嗎?
2. 你有筆嗎?
3. 有啊。
4. 有，給你。

PINYIN

1. yǒu bǐ ma ?
2. nǐ yǒu bǐ ma ?
3. yǒu ā .
4. yǒu , gěi nǐ .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you have a pen?

2. Do you have a pen?

3. Yes, I have.

4. Yes, here you are.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
给		gěi	to give	verb
笔		bǐ	pen	noun
吗		ma	question marker	particle
有	有	yǒu	to have	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
啊	啊	a	mood particle	mood particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián . I have no money.	他们院子里有太多垃圾了。 tāmen yuànzi lǐ yǒu tài duō lājī le . They have too much garbage in their garden.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?

哇，好多事情啊。
Wa, hǎo duō shìqíng a.

Wow, so many things!

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about possession.

	Register	Thai	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**informal**	**有笔吗？**	***yǒu bǐ ma ?***	**Do you have a pen?**
Word 1		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 2		笔	*bǐ*	pen
Word 3		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你有笔吗？**	***nǐ yǒu bǐ ma ?***	**Do you have a pen?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 3		笔	*bǐ*	pen
Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**informal**	**有啊。**	***yǒu ā .***	**Yes, I have.**
Word 1		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 2		啊	*a*	mood particle

Phrase 4	**formal**	**有，给你。**	***yǒu , gěi nǐ .***	**Yes, here you are.**
Word 1		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 2		给	*gěi*	to give
Word 3		你	*nǐ*	you

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Although *Nǐ yǒu qìchē ma*? and *Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qìchē*? both mean “do you have a car?”, *Nǐ yǒu qìchē ma*? is a little more formal than *Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qìchē*? When you say *Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qìchē*?, you should be be careful about your tone, or you might sound rude.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #19 Going Without

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#19

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我没有笔。
2. 我没有时间。
3. 我不知道。
4. 我不明白。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我沒有筆。
2. 我沒有時間。
3. 我不知道。
4. 我不明白。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ méiyǒu bǐ .
2. Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān .
3. Wǒ bù zhīdào .
4. Wǒ bù míngbai.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I don't have a pen.

2. I don't have time.

3. I don't know.

4. I don't understand.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
没有		méiyǒu	don't have	verb
笔		bǐ	pen	noun
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
时间		shíjiān	time	noun
不		bù	do not	adverb
知道	知道	zhīdào	to know, know	verb
明白	明白	míngbai	understand	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	也许我们永远不会知道这个习惯是来源于哪里。 yěxǔ wǒmen yǒngyuǎn búhuì zhīdào zhège xíguàn shì láiyuán yú nǎlǐ . We will probably never know the origins of this habit.

我知道问题的答案。 Wǒ zhīdào wèntí de dáàn . I know the answer to the question.	你知道他是谁吗? Nǐ zhīdào tā shì shéi ma? Do you know who he is?

小学生明白了问题。
xiǎoxuéshēng míngbai le wèntí.

The elementary school students understood the problem.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to state essential negative statements.

	Register	**Thai**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**我没有笔。**	***Wǒ méiyǒu bǐ .***	**I don't have a pen.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		没有	*méiyǒu*	don't have
Word 3		笔	*bǐ*	pen
Phrase 2	**formal**	**我没有时间。**	***Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān .***	**I don't have time.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		没有	*méiyǒu*	don't have
Word 3		时间	*shíjiān*	time
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我不知道。**	***Wǒ bù zhīdào .***	**I don't know.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		不	*bù*	do not

Word 3		知道	*zhīdào*	know
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我不明白。**	***Wǒ bù míngbai.***	**I don't understand.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		不	*bù*	do not
Word 3		明白	*míngbái*	understand

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Do you know how to say “Are you a student?” in Chinese? There are two ways. One is *Nǐ shì xuésheng ma*? and the other is *Nǐ shì bù shì xuésheng*? And the rule is the same. *Nǐ shì xuésheng ma*? is a little formal, so use this one when you are in a formal situation.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #20 Talking about Your Likes

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#20

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 你喜欢巧克力吗?
2. 你喜欢糖果吗?
3. 喜欢。
4. 是的，我喜欢。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 你喜歡巧克力嗎?
2. 你喜歡糖果嗎?
3. 喜歡。
4. 是的，我喜歡。

PINYIN

1. nǐ xǐhuān qiǎokèlì ma ?
2. nǐ xǐhuān tángguǒ ma ?
3. xǐhuān.
4. shì de , Wǒ xǐhuān .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you like chocolate?

2. Do you like sweets?

3. Like it.

4. Yes, I like them.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
是的		shì de	yes	adverb
喜欢		xǐhuān	to like	verb
巧克力	巧克力	qiǎokèlì	chocolate	noun
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
吗		ma	question marker	particle
糖果	糖果	tángguǒ	candy	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

吃巧克力会发胖，但是我还是很爱吃。
chī qiǎokèlì huì fàpàng, dànshì Wǒ hái shì hěn ài chī .

Chocolate makes me fat, but I still love it.

孩子们喜欢吃巧克力。
Háizǐmen xǐhuan chī qiǎokèlì.

Children like to eat chocolate.

是你吗?
Shì nǐ ma?

Is it you?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer affirmatively to the question.

	Register	Thai	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**你喜欢巧克力吗？**	***nǐ xǐhuān qiǎokèlì ma ?***	**Do you like chocolate?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like
Word 3		巧克力	*qiǎokèlì*	chocolate
Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你喜欢糖果吗？**	***nǐ xǐhuān tángguǒ ma ?***	**Do you like sweets?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like
Word 3		糖果	*tángguǒ*	candy
Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**informal**	**喜欢。**	***xǐhuān.***	**Like it.**
Word 1		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like
Phrase 4	**formal**	**是的，我喜欢。**	***shì de , Wǒ xǐhuān .***	**Yes, I like them.**
Word 1		是的	*shì de*	yes
Word 2		我	*wǒ*	I

Word 3		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Chinese, if you really want to insist on the fact that you love something but in an informal way, you can use the adverbs *hěn* or *fēicháng* which mean “very much”, to modify the word *xǐhuān*. You will certainly hear *Wǒ hěn xǐhuān jiàqī* or *Wǒ fēicháng xǐhuān jiàqī*! This means "I really like holidays!" It’s stronger than *xǐhuān* but weaker than *ài*.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #21 Talking about Your Dislikes

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#21

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我不喜欢这个。
2. 我不喜欢等。
3. 我讨厌这个。
4. 我讨厌等。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我不喜歡這個。
2. 我不喜歡等。
3. 我討厭這個。
4. 我討厭等。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ bù xǐhuān zhège .
2. Wǒ bù xǐhuān děng .
3. Wǒ tǎoyàn zhège .
4. Wǒ tǎoyàn děng .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I don't like this.

2. I don't like waiting.

3. I hate this.

4. I hate waiting.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
讨厌		tǎo yàn	to dislike	verb
不		bù	do not	adverb
喜欢		xǐhuān	to like	verb
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
这个		zhège	this	pronoun
等	等	děng	to wait	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	你能再等两天吗？收据我很快就会准备好的。 nǐ néng zài děng liǎng tiān ma ? shōujù wǒ hěn kuài jiù huì zhǔnbèi hǎo de . Can you wait for your invoice a couple of days more? I have it almost ready.

我不喜欢等。 wǒ bù xǐhuān děng . I don't like waiting.	你每次都让我等好几个小时! nǐ měicì dōu ràng wǒ děng hǎojǐ ge xiǎoshí ! Every time you made me wait for hours!

你等我一下。
Nǐ děng wǒ yíxià.

Wait for me a moment.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to say that you don't like something.

	Register	**Thai**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**我不喜欢这个。**	***Wǒ bù xǐhuān zhège .***	**I don't like this.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		不	*bù*	do not
Word 3		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like
Word 4		这个	*zhège*	this
Phrase 2	**formal**	**我不喜欢等。**	***Wǒ bù xǐhuān děng .***	**I don't like waiting.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		不	*bù*	do not
Word 3		喜欢	*xǐhuān*	to like
Word 4		等	*děng*	to wait

Phrase 3	**formal**	**我讨厌这个。**	***Wǒ tǎoyàn zhège .***	**I hate this.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		讨厌	*tǎo yàn*	to dislike
Word 3		这个	*zhège*	this
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我讨厌等。**	***Wǒ tǎoyàn děng .***	**I hate waiting.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		讨厌	*tǎo yàn*	to dislike
Word 3		等	*děng*	to wait

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When a “what” question can be answered with numbers, you can use another word, *jǐ*, instead of *shénme*. As in "What number are you?" In this case, you should say *Nǐ shì jǐ hào*?

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #22 Ordering at a Restaurant

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

#22

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 我能看一下菜单吗?
2. 你有什么推荐的吗?
3. 我要咖啡。
4. 我要一杯咖啡。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 我能看一下菜單嗎?
2. 你有甚麼推薦的嗎?
3. 我要咖啡。
4. 我要一杯咖啡。

PINYIN

1. Wǒ néng kàn yíxià càidān ma ?
2. nǐ yǒu shénme tuījiàn de ma ?
3. Wǒ yào kāfēi .
4. Wǒ yào yì bēi kāfēi .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Can I see the menu?

2. What do you recommend?

3. A coffee for me.

4. I would like a coffee.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
能		néng	can	verb
看一下		kàn yíxià	to have a look	verb
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
菜单		càidān	menu	noun
吗		ma	question marker	particle
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
有	有	yǒu	to have	verb
什么		shénme	what	pronoun
推荐的		tuījiàn de	things to recommend	noun
要	要	yào	to want	verb
咖啡	咖啡	kāfēi	coffee	noun
一	一	yī	one	number
杯	杯	bēi	cup	measure word

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?
我没有钱。 Wǒ méiyǒu qián . I have no money.	他们院子里有太多垃圾了。 tāmen yuànzi lǐ yǒu tài duō lājī le . They have too much garbage in their garden.
这儿有图书馆吗? Zhèr yǒu túshūguǎn ma? Is there a library around here?	他要一张纸。 Tā yào yì zhāng zhǐ. He wants a piece of paper.
我每天都要喝咖啡。 Wǒ měi tiān dōu yào hē kāfēi . I have to drink coffee everyday.	我要喝咖啡。 Wǒ yào hē kāfēi. I want to drink coffee.
他给我一本书。 Tā gěi wǒ yī běn shū. He gave me a book.	我想喝一杯咖啡。 Wǒ xiǎng hē yī bēi kāfēi. I want to drink a cup of coffee.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to order at a restaurant or coffee shop.

	Register	**Thai**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**我能看一下菜单吗?**	***Wǒ néng kàn yíxià càidān ma ?***	**Can I see the menu?**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		能	*néng*	can

Word 3		看一下	*kàn yíxià*	to have a look
Word 4		菜单	*càidān*	menu
Word 5		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**formal**	**你有什么推荐的吗？**	***nǐ yǒu shénme tuījiàn de ma ?***	**What do you recommend?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 3		什么	*shénme*	what
Word 4		推荐的	*tuījiàn de*	things to recommend
Word 5		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我要咖啡。**	***Wǒ yào kāfēi .***	**A coffee for me.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		要	*yào*	to want
Word 3		咖啡	*kāfēi*	coffee
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我要一杯咖啡。**	***Wǒ yào yì bēi kāfēi .***	**I would like a coffee.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		要	*yào*	to want
Word 3		一	*yì*	one

Word 4		杯	*bēi*	cup

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Do you know how to get a waiter or waitress's attention in China? It's simple. Most times, to get service in a restaurant, just yell 服务员 (*fúwùyuán*) to call them over to your table for service. Don't be shy!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #23 Asking for the Bill

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

23

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 可以给我账单吗?
2. 在哪儿结账?
3. 不好意思，你找错钱了。
4. 不用找了。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 可以給我賬單嗎?
2. 在哪兒結賬?
3. 不好意思，你找錯錢了。
4. 不用找了

PINYIN

1. kěyǐ gěi wǒ zhàngdān ma ?
2. zài nǎr jiézhàng ?
3. bùhǎoyìsi , nǐ zhǎo cuò qián le .
4. búyòng zhǎo le.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Can you bring the bill, please?

2. Where can I pay the bill?

3. Excuse me, the change is wrong.

4. Keep the change.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
账单	賬單	zhàngdān	the check	noun
帮	幫	bāng	to help	verb
吗		ma	question marker	particle
可以	可以	kěyǐ	can	verb
结账		jiézhàng	to check	verb
在	在	zài	at, in	preposition
哪儿		nǎr	where	pronoun
结账		jiézhàng	check	verb
不好意思	不好意思	bùhǎo yìsi	excuse me	phrase, expression
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
找错		zhǎo cuò	wrong	phrase
了		le	particle	particle
不用		búyòng	no need to	phrase

找	找	zhǎo	to give change	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

你可以帮我吗? Nǐ kěyǐ bāng wǒ ma? Can you help me?	你可以叫我丽丽。 Nǐ kěyǐ jiào wǒ Lìli. You can call me Lili.
不好意思，你见过我的狗吗? Bùhǎoyìsi , nǐ jiànguò wǒ de gǒu ma ? Excuse me, have you seen my dog?	不好意思，请再说一遍，好吗? Bùhǎoyìsi, qǐng zài shuō yī biàn, hǎo ma? Excuse me, please say that again, okay?
是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	这是找你的钱。 Zhè shì zhǎo nǐ de qián. This is your change.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask for the bill and check the change.

	Register	**Chinese**	***Romanization***	**English**
Phrase 1	**formal**	**可以给我账单吗?**	***kěyǐ gěi wǒ zhàngdān ma ?***	**Can you bring the bill, please?**
Word 1		可以	*kěyǐ*	can
Word 2		给我	*gěi wǒ*	to give me
Word 3		账	*zhàngdān*	to check
Word 4		吗	*ma*	question marker

Phrase 2	**formal**	**在哪儿结账？**	***zài nǎr jiézhàng ?***	**Where can I pay the bill?**
Word 1		在	*zài*	in
Word 2		哪儿	*nǎr*	where
Word 3		结账	*jiézhàng*	check
Phrase 3	**formal**	**不好意思，你找错钱了。**	***bùhǎoyìsi , nǐ zhǎo cuò qián le .***	**Excuse me, the change is wrong.**
Word 1		不好意思	*bùhǎoyìsi*	excuse me
Word 2		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 3		找错	*zhǎo cuò*	wrong
Word 4		钱	*qián*	money
Word 5		了	*le*	particle
Phrase 4	**formal**	**不用找了。**	***búyòng zhǎo le.***	**Keep the change.**
Word 1		不用	*búyòng*	no need to
Word 2		找	*zhǎo*	to give change
Word 3		了	*le*	particle

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In the Chinese currency, the 100 RMB note is the highest denomination. The one problem with these little pink notes is having enough change to pay for cheap items. A cash register can run out of small bills relatively quickly with a quick succession of 100 RMB notes. Having small change available is crucial, especially when riding in taxis where they may not have

small change. You may find yourself stranded on the roadside with an angry taxi driver waiting for you to get change!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #24 Offering an Invitation

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

#24

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 周五晚上有什么计划吗?
2. 星期五晚有计划吗?
3. 我准备去看电影。
4. 你来吗?

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 周五晚上有甚麼計劃嗎?
2. 星期五晚有計劃嗎?
3. 我準備去看電影。
4. 你來嗎?

PINYIN

1. zhōuwǔ wǎnshàng yǒu shénme jìhuà ma ?
2. Xīngqīwǔ wǎn yǒujìhuà ma ?
3. Wǒ zhǔnbèi qù kàn diànyǐng .
4. nǐ lái ma ?

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you have plans on Friday night?

2. Do you have plans on Friday night?

3. I'm going to the movies.

4. Will you join?

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
来		lái	to come	verb
晚上	晚上	wǎnshàng	evening	noun
有什么		yǒu shénme	have what	phrase
吗		ma	question marker	particle
周五		zhōuwǔ	Friday	noun
计划		jìhuà	plan	noun
星期五	星期五	xīngqīwǔ	Friday	noun
晚		wǎn	night	adjective
有		yǒu	to have	verb
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
准备		zhǔnbèi	to prepare	verb
去	去	qù	to go	verb
看	看	kàn	to watch	verb

电影		diànyǐng	movie	noun
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

我们经常在夏日温暖的晚上打牌。 Wǒmen jīngcháng zài xiàrì wēnnuǎn de wǎnshàng dǎpái . We often play cards on a warm summer evening.	网球场晚上也开。 Wǎngqiúcháng wǎnshàng yě kāi. The tennis court is open in the evening, too.
我们今天晚上去看电影。 Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshàng qù kān diànyǐng. Tonight we are going to see a movie.	我星期五休息。 Wǒ xīngqīwǔ xiūxi. I have Friday off.
我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.	下周末谁去海边? xià zhōumò shéi qù hǎibiān ? Who is going to the beach next weekend?
我去了动物医院。 Wǒ qù le dòngwù yīyuàn. I went to the animal hospital.	我去公园。 Wǒ qù gōngyuán. I'm going to the park.
我经常看这个电视节目。 wǒ jīngcháng kàn zhège diànshì jiémù . I always watch this TV show.	我平时不看体育比赛的，不过昨晚我破例了。 Wǒ píngshí bú kàn tǐyù bǐsài de, búguò zuówǎn wǒ pòlì le . Usually, I don't watch any sports but I made an exception yesterday.
来酒吧看球。 Lái jiǔbā kàn qiú. Come to the bar and watch the game.	今天的电影很好看。 Jīntiān de diànyǐng hěn hǎokàn. Today's movie looked really good.

是你吗?
Shì nǐ ma?

Is it you?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to invite someone out.

	Register	Chinese	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**周五晚上有什么计划吗?**	***zhōuwǔ wǎnshàng yǒu shénme jìhuà ma ?***	**Do you have plans on Friday night?**
Word 1		周五	*zhōuwǔ*	Friday
Word 2		晚上	*wǎnshàng*	evening
Word 3		有什么	*yǒu shénme*	have what
Word 4		计划	*jìhuà*	plan
Word 5		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 2	**informal**	**星期五晚有计划吗?**	***Xīngqīwǔ wǎn yǒujìhuà ma ?***	**Do you have plans on Friday night?**
Word 1		星期五	*xīngqīwǔ*	Friday
Word 2		晚	*wǎn*	night
Word 3		有	*yǒu*	to have
Word 4		计划	*jìhuà*	plan

Word 5		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 3	**formal**	**我准备去看电影。**	***Wǒ zhǔnbèi qù kàn diànyǐng .***	**I'm going to the movies.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		准备	*zhǔnbèi*	to prepare
Word 3		去	*qù*	to go
Word 4		看	*kàn*	to watch
Word 5		电影	*diànyǐng*	movie
Phrase 4	**informal**	**你来吗？**	***nǐ lái ma ?***	**Will you join?**
Word 1		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 2		来	*lái*	to come
Word 3		吗	*ma*	question marker

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Imagine somebody has knocked at your door, and you want him or her to come in. You can say jìn lai. But this is a very informal way of addressing someone and you should be careful with your tone, because sometimes it could sound like an order. If you want to invite someone in more formally, you can say *qǐng jìn*. Literally, this means “please come in”, but here we don’t need to say *lái* at the end.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Chinese S1 #25 On the Phone

CONTENTS

2 Simplified Chinese
2 Traditional Chinese
2 Pinyin
2 English
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#25

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

SIMPLIFIED CHINESE

1. 喂，你好。
2. 我是李琳。
3. 王强在吗?
4. 我等一下再打。

TRADITIONAL CHINESE

1. 喂，你好。
2. 我是李琳。
3. 王強在嗎?
4. 我等一下再打。

PINYIN

1. wéi , nǐhǎo .
2. Wǒ shì Lǐ Lín .
3. Wáng Qiáng zài ma ?
4. Wǒ děng yí xià zài dǎ .

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Hello. (answering)

2. This is Li Lin.

3. May I talk to [name]?

4. I'll call again later.

VOCABULARY

Simplified	Traditional	Pinyin	English	Class
打		dǎ	call	verb
你	你	nǐ	you	pronoun
好	好	hǎo	good	adjective
喂	喂	wéi	hello (answering telephone)	expression
我	我	wǒ	I	pronoun
是	是	shì	to be	verb
李琳。		Lǐ Lín	Li Lin	proper noun
王强		Wáng Qiáng	Wang Qiang	proper noun
在	在	zài	at, in	preposition
吗		ma	question marker	particle
等一下		děng yí xià	wait a moment	phrase
再	再	zài	again	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

是你吗? Shì nǐ ma? Is it you?	我感觉很好。 wǒ gǎnjué hěn hǎo . I feel good.
他真的是个很好的人。善良又大方。 tā zhēnde shì gè hěn hǎo de rén . shànliáng yòu dàfāng . He is a really good person, kind and generous.	加州很好。 Jiāzhōu hěn hǎo. California is very nice.
喂! 你找谁? Wéi! Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Hello! Who are you looking for?	我叫王林。 Wǒ jiào Wáng Lín. I am called Wang Lin.
他是我哥哥。 Tā shì wǒ gēge. He is my older brother.	你能再说一遍吗? nǐ néng zài shuō yí biàn ma ? Could you say that again?
再做一遍吧。 Zài zuò yí biàn ba. Do it again.	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to understand the basic vocabulary on the phone.

	Register	Thai	*Romanization*	English
Phrase 1	**formal**	**喂，你好。**	***wéi , nǐhǎo .***	**Hello. (answering)**

Word 1		喂	*wéi*	hello (answering telephone)
Word 2		你	*nǐ*	you
Word 3		好	*hǎo*	good
Phrase 2	**formal**	**我是李琳。**	***Wǒ shì Lǐ Lín .***	**This is Li Lin.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		是	*shì*	to be
Word 3		李琳。	*Lǐ Lín*	Li Lin
Phrase 3	**informal**	**王强在吗？**	***Wáng Qiáng zài ma ?***	**May I talk to [name]?**
Word 1		王强	*Wáng Qiáng*	Wang Qiang
Word 2		在	*zài*	in
Word 3		吗	*ma*	question marker
Phrase 4	**formal**	**我等一下再打。**	***Wǒ děng yí xià zài dǎ .***	**I'll call again later.**
Word 1		我	*wǒ*	I
Word 2		等一下	*děng yí xià*	wait a moment
Word 3		再	*zài*	again
Word 4		打	*dǎ*	call

CULTURAL INSIGHT

While long-distance domestic telephone calls are pretty cheap in China, international telephone calls are very expensive. Get around the high charges by looking for international IP telephone cards. These require you to dial a 5-digit number and enter a keycode before dialing your destination number, but will cut your per-minute charges. That will make your call home more than affordable!